

# COMPLETE BRAZILIAN PORTUGUESE

Speak, read and write with confidence (page xxiii)

Learn Brazilian Portuguese pronunciation (page xxx)

Introduce yourself (page 1) Talk about your family (page 14)

Ask for directions (page 40) Tell the time (page 45)

Talk about the weather (page 50) Order a

typical Brazilian meal (page 89) Get

around (page 101) Book a hotel room (page 110)

Hire a car (page 149) Arrange to meet people (page 156)

Make a phone call (page 163) Speak to a doctor (page 201)

Say goodbye (page 213) Test yourself and learn more online ([www.teachyourself.com](http://www.teachyourself.com))



EVERYTHING YOU  
NEED TO SPEAK,  
READ AND WRITE

# Brazilian Portuguese

Sue Tyson-Ward

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd,  
130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SB.

Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454.

Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour  
message answering service. Details about our titles and how to  
order are available at [www.teachyourself.com](http://www.teachyourself.com)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill  
Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA.

Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill  
Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 9B6, Canada.

Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning –  
with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the

*Teach Yourself* series includes over 500 titles in the fields of  
languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record  
for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

**First published in UK 1997 as *Teach Yourself Brazilian Portuguese*  
by Hodder Education, part of Hachette UK, 338 Euston Road,  
London NW1 3BH.**

**First published in US 1997 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.**

This edition published 2010.

The *Teach Yourself* name is a registered trade mark of  
Hachette UK.

Copyright © 1997, 2003, 2010 Sue Tyson-Ward

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK  
copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or  
transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical,  
including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and  
retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher  
or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited.  
Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction)  
may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited,  
of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States  
Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced  
or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or  
retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by MPS Limited, A Macmillan Company.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, an Hachette UK  
Company, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs  
for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active  
at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author  
have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee  
that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant,  
decent or appropriate.

Hachette UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable  
and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable  
forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to  
conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Year 2014 2013 2012 2011 2010

---

# Contents

<i>Acknowledgements</i>	vi
<i>Meet the author</i>	vii
<i>Only got a minute?</i>	viii
<i>Only got five minutes?</i>	x
<i>Only got ten minutes?</i>	xiv
<i>Personal introduction</i>	xxii
<i>Introduction</i>	xxiii
<i>Glossary of grammatical terms</i>	xxvi
<i>Pronunciation</i>	xxx
<b>1 Seu passaporte, por favor</b> <i>Your passport, please</i>	<b>1</b>
Identifying people; Introducing yourself and addressing people; Saying hellos and goodbyes; Checking into your hotel	
<b>2 Você é casada?</b> <i>Are you married?</i>	<b>14</b>
Talking about yourself and family; Talking about your home town; Giving your address and telephone number	
<b>3 Onde é sua cidade?</b> <i>Where is your town?</i>	<b>29</b>
Describing where your home town is; Describing your belongings and recovering lost property; Describing what things are made of; Colours	
<b>4 Há uma farmácia por aqui?</b> <i>Is there a chemist's around here?</i>	<b>40</b>
Asking and understanding basic directions; Talking about the weather; Understanding time; Saying 'there is/there are'	
<b>5 A que horas começa?</b> <i>What time do you start?</i>	<b>53</b>
Discussing your work; Discussing how you travel to work; Daily routine	
<b>6 O que faz no tempo livre?</b> <i>What do you do in your free time?</i>	<b>65</b>
Discussing leisure time; Talking about what you like doing; Leisure facilities and entertainments	

<b>7</b>	<b>Pois não?</b> <i>Can I help you?</i>	<b>78</b>
	Obtaining goods and services; Buying clothes and shoes; Discussing sizes	
<b>8</b>	<b>Que vai comer?</b> <i>What are you going to eat?</i>	<b>88</b>
	Ordering a meal; Making requests; Typical Brazilian food	
<b>9</b>	<b>Vai viajar?</b> <i>Are you going travelling?</i>	<b>100</b>
	Means of transport; Asking for change; Departure and arrival times	
<b>10</b>	<b>Tem um apartamento livre?</b> <i>Do you have a room free?</i>	<b>109</b>
	Obtaining a hotel room; Making minor complaints; Brazilian meals and meal times	
<b>11</b>	<b>Que tal esta?</b> <i>What about this one?</i>	<b>119</b>
	Likes and dislikes; Preferences; Shopping for souvenirs; Buying snacks	
<b>12</b>	<b>Por que não vamos ao teatro?</b> <i>Why don't we go to the theatre?</i>	<b>128</b>
	Planning an evening out; Getting tickets for entertainment; Making invitations; More on time	
<b>13</b>	<b>É tudo?</b> <i>Is that everything?</i>	<b>141</b>
	Obtaining postal services; Buying groceries; Dealing with car hire, parking and petrol	
<b>14</b>	<b>Está livre amanhã de tarde?</b> <i>Are you free tomorrow afternoon?</i>	<b>155</b>
	Making plans for the future; Arranging to meet people; Telephone calls; Months	
<b>15</b>	<b>Como foi a viagem?</b> <i>How was the journey?</i>	<b>169</b>
	Talking in the past; Discussing a visit you've made; Describing actions	
<b>16</b>	<b>Quanto custaram?</b> <i>How much did they cost?</i>	<b>181</b>
	Talking about what you've bought; Identifying your own property; More on the past	
<b>17</b>	<b>Era tudo tão diferente</b> <i>It was all so different</i>	<b>189</b>
	Talking about something you saw earlier; Identifying strangers; Recalling how a place used to be	

<b>18 O que você tem? <i>What's the matter?</i></b>	<b>200</b>
Describing illness and ailments;	
Dealing with the chemist and doctor;	
Coping with an accident; saying goodbye	
<i>Testing yourself: Units 1–9</i>	<b>214</b>
<i>Testing yourself: Units 10–18</i>	<b>219</b>
<i>Taking it further</i>	<b>224</b>
<i>Key to the exercises</i>	<b>227</b>
<i>Key to 'testing yourself'</i>	<b>236</b>
<i>Numbers</i>	<b>238</b>
<i>BP–English vocabulary</i>	<b>239</b>
<i>English–BP vocabulary</i>	<b>245</b>
<i>Grammar index</i>	<b>251</b>

---

## Credits

**Front cover:** © Elder Salles – Fotolia.com

**Back cover and pack:** © Jakub Semeniuk/iStockphoto.com,  
 © Royalty-Free/Corbis, © agencyby/iStockphoto.com, © Andy  
 Cook/iStockphoto.com, © Christopher Ewing/iStockphoto.com,  
 © zebicho – Fotolia.com, © Geoffrey Holman/iStockphoto.com,  
 © Photodisc/Getty Images, © James C. Pruitt/iStockphoto.com,  
 © Mohamed Saber – Fotolia.com

**Pack:** © Stockbyte/Getty Images

*For Mum and Dad*

---

## Acknowledgements

Many thanks to Mrs Lúcia Cooper for materials and guidance and to Sarah Mitchell from Hodder for her total encouragement in the first place. Thanks, also, to Ginny Catmur at Hodder, and Rosemary Morlin for their work on this new edition. And to Brazil, for instilling the fire of life. **Viva!**

---

## Meet the author

I have had a connection with Portugal since living with a Portuguese family prior to starting my studies at Oxford in 1984. During my degree course I also spent a year in Brazil, an experience which I have drawn on frequently over the years in my teaching and writing. Since graduating with a degree in Portuguese and Spanish in 1988, I have also lived, worked and studied in Portugal, and continue to visit there each year with my family, often travelling through remote regions by public transport.

I have written a number of books on Portuguese language, life and culture, as well as on living, working and buying property there. I was invited to act as language consultant for the BBC's highly-acclaimed TV series 'Talk Portuguese', and have also given advice for the 'Brazil Inside Out' series.

I have been involved in Portuguese examinations in the UK since 1992, taking on the roles as Moderator for GCSE Speaking Tests, Principal Examiner for GCSE Writing, and Principal Moderator for Asset Speaking Tests; I was also the Subject Officer for Portuguese at the Awarding Body.

I continue to teach Portuguese language and culture in Lancaster and run the North-West Portuguese Circle. I am a keen and enthusiastic promoter of all things relating to the Portuguese-speaking world.

Sue Tyson-Ward





# *Only got a minute?*

Portuguese is spoken by over 200 million people across the globe, with approximately 190 million of these in Brazil. Already an increasingly-important world economy, Brazil holds a wealth of diverse interests across a range of areas.

Portuguese has its roots predominantly in Latin, so if you already know languages such as French, Spanish, or Italian, you should be able to read Portuguese quite easily. If you have no prior knowledge of other languages, you need not worry; regular, short sessions of learning will help you overcome the basics quite quickly. Many words are also very similar to English, and spotting the links, unlocking the code, will give you the confidence and desire to keep up your learning. Complete Brazilian Portuguese is designed to do just that: to help you unlock the code of how the structure of Portuguese works, and to allow you the opportunity, at whatever level, to progress from repeating simple holiday phrases to creating your own sentences and saying what YOU want to say in response to what is happening around you.

Brazil is a place of inspiring landscapes, a wealth of culture, and friendly people, and is a wonderful place in which to try out the language: its laid-back approach to life cascades over into the way the language is manipulated. Even with just a few phrases under your belt, you will be so delighted with the response to your efforts that you will very easily want to go much further. Whether you want to be on the sun-drenched beaches of Rio, exploring the Amazon wonders, joining the Samba parades in February, or doing business in hi-tech São Paulo or Brasília, Brazilian Portuguese offers a great new world of opportunity. And should you take your learning to a higher level, you open the door to some fantastic Brazilian literature, song lyrics, films, and authentic recipes for amazing food. *Complete Brazilian Portuguese* gives you the possibility to do all of that with confidence.

Ride the crest of the wave into the Brazilian way of life, and become part of one of the world's most fascinating cultures.



# 5

## Only got five minutes?

---

### Why Brazilian Portuguese?


There are a number of very valid reasons why you might wish to take up Brazilian Portuguese:

- ▶ As a visitor to or potential resident in Brazil, for holiday purposes whilst there, or to get by more confidently dealing with the services and everyday life of your new environment.
- ▶ For business purposes: the world's eighth largest economy that is Brazil has much to offer foreign investors. More and more UK and US businesses are forging links there, and opportunities are constantly arising for interesting initiatives. Brazil continues to enjoy relative stability in its economy, which has engendered a lot of interest from foreign companies, financiers and investors alike.
- ▶ For adventure, eco-interests and voluntary work: the Amazon region of Brazil has long-been a magnet for anthropologists, linguists and ecologists, and in today's climate of global eco-concern, there is no better area for research. Brazil also offers many opportunities for voluntary work, from the densely-populated metropolis of São Paulo (with 17 million inhabitants, the world's third largest city), to the favela slums of Rio, and the large areas of the barren North-East.
- ▶ For educational purposes: there is huge scope for teachers of English in many parts of Brazil. There are a few good international schools mainly in Rio and São Paulo and hundreds, if not thousands, of English-language schools. And whilst English may be the language of function within the classroom, Portuguese will be your language of everyday life beyond. A number of British students have also spent

fruitful study time at some of Brazil's universities, with particular links for business/management studies and ecologically-based areas of study.

If those reasons were not enough, you might be interested in world history and culture; Brazil's 'discovery' by Portuguese explorers back in 1500, and its subsequent development and break-away from Portuguese rule are a fascinating backdrop to this amazing country. You may have a love of world music, and from the mighty Samba and Bossa Nova to the 'Tropicalismo' movement of the 1960s and 1970s, and more modern musicians still beating out those mesmeric rhythms, what better way to use the language than understanding the lyrics of this music, and seeing straight into the soul of this diverse nation. Are you perhaps fascinated by world literature? What a world awaits you, in original writings from Brazil: the great Jorge Amado or Clarice Lispector, Machado de Assis, and the mystic Paulo Coelho. Have we mentioned the sport ('futebol' the obvious one), the food, the magnificent landscapes away from any trace of English speakers, the films (Brazilian cinema has produced some of the most acclaimed films in recent years)?

Or perhaps your interest lies in the pursuit of language for language-sake. And why not? Portuguese is a great choice, either for the novice language-learner or the already-accomplished linguist. It is basically a Romance (Latin-based) language, with a recognizable script (alphabet) and a not-too difficult sound system. It is described as a 'phonetic' language, that is in general terms what you see you pronounce. In this sense it is far easier than, say, French or English, both of which have complexities of spelling and sounds. It is also a very melodic language, and whilst the Portuguese of Brazil may sound very different from that spoken in Portugal, the recent spelling agreement (the new Acordo Ortográfico) between all the Portuguese-speaking countries, means that wherever you travel in the Lusophone world, there exists a consistency of how words are written. Each region will still maintain its own quirks of expression and vocabulary, in the same way as the English-speaking world.



---

## Easing into the language

If you are new to languages, or a ‘rusty’ learner, you should not find (Brazilian) Portuguese too daunting. Forget any negative memories of old school languages, but try to draw on aspects of other languages you have been exposed to in the past – however distant or slight that may be. Links back to school French and Latin will help you recognize structures and vocabulary. Any experience of Spanish will be of particular help (although at times can also be a hindrance!).

Portuguese belongs to the group of languages named ‘Romance’ languages, based on Latin. It was also influenced over the years by Arabic (a legacy of its Moorish invaders), and to a much lesser extent, by some of the Celtic invaders. But it is predominantly Latin in structure and vocabulary. Its alphabet is the same as English, although the letters k, y and w are still mainly used in abbreviations, proper names or imported foreign words.

Due to its Latin roots, which are shared by many English roots, you will be heartened by the many words you can recognize, from your initial steps into Portuguese: **porto** (*port*), **papel** (*paper*), **serpente** (*snake*), **carro** (*car*). Verbs, on the other hand, pose more of an initial problem to English-speakers, as their endings change according to the person doing the action, and when. But it is a code you soon start to break.

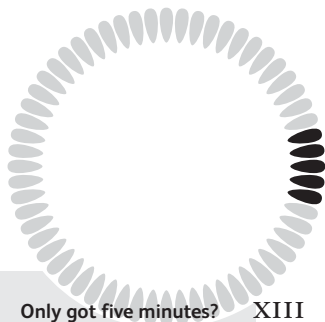
---

## The Portuguese world beyond Brazil

Let us not forget that the Portuguese-speaking family is actually a very important one in world terms. Portuguese is the official language of Portugal (including Madeira and the Azores), Brazil, Angola, Mozambique, Guinea Bissau, São Tomé and Príncipe, Cabo Verde, and is still an official language in some sections

of society in Macau and in East Timor. It was also used in Goa and its influence, and testament to the far-flung edges reached by Portuguese navigators in the 15th and 16th centuries, can still be found in words such as vindaloo (**vinho** and **alho**, *wine* and *garlic* being the main ingredients of this Indian dish), marmalade (from **marmelo** – *quince*) and a good cup of char (from **chá**, or *chaa* introduced to the English courts by Catherine of Bragança, who married Charles II). Overall, in number-crunching terms, there are now well over 200 million native Portuguese speakers, either in their own countries, or living as immigrants in places such as the UK, France, Switzerland, Canada, South Africa and the USA. That places Portuguese as the sixth most widely spoken language in the world, far higher than French, German or Italian. It is the third most spoken European language in the world, behind English and Spanish. Learning Portuguese leads you into an amazing world with a fascinating and vitally important history, legacies of wonderful literature, cuisine, music and inventions, and a diversity of peoples.

Portuguese is a passport to great opportunities, and by learning Brazilian Portuguese, your success in and enjoyment of that hugely exciting mega-culture is yours for the taking!





# 10 Only got ten minutes?

Whatever reason your interest in Brazilian Portuguese may be – travel, tourism, business, cultural – you have chosen, or are about to choose, a vitally-important world language, the learning of which will open doorways into some of the world’s most interesting culture. Portuguese is not only the language of the small country of Portugal, with its ten million inhabitants, but in fact the third most widely spoken European language in the world (behind only English and Spanish). There are now over 200 million native speakers of Portuguese spread around the globe. The language is the official means of communication in continental Portugal and the island groups of Madeira and the Azores, the five former African colonies of Angola, Mozambique, Guinea Bissau, São Tomé and Príncipe and Cabo Verde (Cape Verde). It also includes, of course, the ‘giant’ of South America, Brazil, on its own now accounting for around 190 million speakers. The language is also still spoken in East Timor and to a lesser extent, Macau. Overall, that places Portuguese as the sixth most widely spoken language in the world. And not a lot of people know that! What is definitely worthy of note is that UNESCO estimates that Portuguese has the highest growth potential as a language of international communication throughout South America and Southern Africa; alongside Spanish, it is already one of the fastest-growing languages of the west.

For many years, scholars of languages, history, literature and the Arts have been studying the cultures of these rich and diverse communities, but it is in more recent years that Portuguese has become a foreign language of choice for a much wider audience. Those wishing to use it on holiday, while travelling, for business purposes, or for the obvious enjoyment links to aspects of culture such as the amazing Brazilian music and film industry. And with Brazilian musicians, and writers such as the much-translated Paulo Coelho bringing the language to eminence on the world stage, Portuguese has increasingly grown in popularity as a beautiful

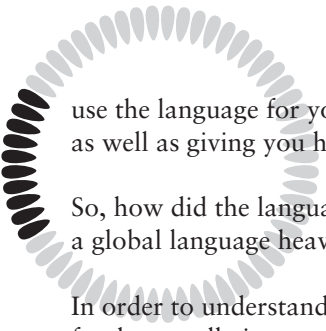
language to learn, one that is fairly accessible and manageable at some level or other for most people.

In the English-speaking world, we have long suffered the illusion, set down by our colonizing forbears, that we can travel the globe with no knowledge of local language or customs, and still 'get by'. Well, yes, that is very true, and we can gesticulate, speak ever more loudly, and s-l-o-w-l-y, and the natives will somehow get over the dreadful hurdle of understanding us! It has to be said, too, that many educated Brazilians are very good at English (and Spanish), so we are oft lulled into a false cocoon of Englishness whilst visiting there; this, in turn, does little to engender the motivation to get stuck into learning the local language.

However, for vast amounts of this huge country you will not get very far without at least the very basics of Portuguese. Even in those areas seemingly developing themselves as potential tourist and property-investment spots, visitors have noted a real lack of English language skills amongst the everyday local people. However, for a relatively small investment of your time and effort in taking on board some Portuguese, you will always be rewarded with real value-added return: you will be exposed to the real country and its customs, and welcomed by its people.

You may, of course, need far more than the basics; more and more UK, US and world businesses have working links with Brazil; Brazil now forms part of what is termed the BRIC economies (those of Brazil, Russia, India and China – now considered the most important emerging world economies). Brazil represents an enormous canvas of opportunity for scientists, ecologists, sociologists, anthropologists, as well as for more ordinary 'ists' – tourists. It always has done, really, but now it has become far easier to get there, and recent developments in northern Brazil are encouraging more outsiders to invest in property there too. But for large expanses of this simply huge land-mass, a knowledge of Portuguese is absolutely vital. And that is where **Complete Brazilian Portuguese** comes in: supporting you to learn the structures of the language in order to enable you to form your own sentences and





use the language for your own purposes and at your own level, as well as giving you handy phrases and cultural insights.

So, how did the language of such a small country emerge as such a global language heavyweight?

In order to understand how and why Portuguese is such a fundamentally important language, we need to look at how its history became part of the development of Brazil, which mapped out the pivotal role it came to play on the global stage.

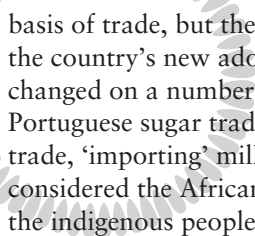
To find out how it all began, let's first go back to the prehistoric times of Ancient Lusitânia. Portugal is one of the oldest nations in Europe, with a rich prehistoric culture still evident in large numbers of megalithic sites. The area was visited by various travelling cultures, such as the Phoenicians and Greek traders. In the 6th century BC the Carthaginians had control, then lost it to the Roman Empire, who called the Iberian peninsula 'Hispania Ulterior'. The most difficult of local tribes the Romans found lived north of Lisbon, and were known as the Lusitani, after whom the land had originally been named. The Romans, as elsewhere, left many signs of their time there, not only in buildings, but also in the language spoken by the invaders and their diverse legions of men. By the 5th century AD, invaders from the barbaric northern tribes had made their presence felt: Vandals, and Visigoths to name but two. But the southern invasions of Moors from northern Africa were to have a far longer and far-reaching impact on the territory, as they also did in neighbouring Spain. They arrived in 711, and stayed until the 13th century. They settled well and brought new farming methods, fruits and a relatively calm way of life. Linguistically, they also left some traces, though far less than the Romans before them. By the 8th century, Portugal was known as Portuscale and was ruled over by the king of Leon in Spain.

By the 12th century, Iberia had started its fight back against the Moors. In 1179 the Pope finally recognized a Portuguese kingdom, ruled over by Afonso Henriques, who successfully battled against the Moors in the 1139 Battle of Ourique. Throughout Europe the

Reconquest against the Moors was in full swing, having become the ‘Western Crusade’, and finally Portuguese territory was rid of its invaders and had its boundaries officially recognized by Castille in 1297 in the Treaty of Alcañices.

Over the next two centuries Portugal entered a period of immense activity which was to have a profound effect upon the rest of the world, as well as establish it as one of the world’s leading lights in science, navigation, astronomy and geography. The era of explorations – the Discoveries – were initially sparked by a shortage of gold in Europe, together with the continuing idea of the Crusades. The Portuguese became masters of the map, creating their own style of boat, the **caravela**, and developing navigational equipment such as the compass. They were sponsored in much of their activities by Prince Henry (later called ‘the Navigator’ by English writers, although he never actually sailed himself). Many of the most famous navigators you may have heard of were of Portuguese provenance: Bartolomeu Dias rounding the Cape of Good Hope, Vasco da Gama reaching Calicut and opening up the routes to the East, the circumnavigation of the world by Ferdinand Magellan (yes, Portuguese, but in the service of Spain!), and the hugely important feat in 1500 of Pedro Álvares Cabral landing in Brazil.

Whilst this was, indeed, a momentous step in the history of both Portugal and Brazil, one cannot ignore the fact that the country had in fact been inhabited by indigenous peoples for as long as 50,000 years. Once the initial ‘meet and greet’ pleasantries had been carried out, and Cabral and his men had erected a cross in the name of Portugal, they sailed off in search of riches in Africa, and it was not until 1531 that Portuguese settlers properly arrived near the southern port of Santos. After that, the Portuguese king sent steady streams of settlers to form a mainstay of strength along Brazil’s long coastline, in an attempt to ward off possible ‘invasions’ by other nationalities looking to exploit Brazil’s resources. At that time, the most lucrative trading resource was the dye produced by an indigenous tree, known as the ‘**pau brazil**’ (*brazilwood*). Later, it was sugar, then gold, that formed the



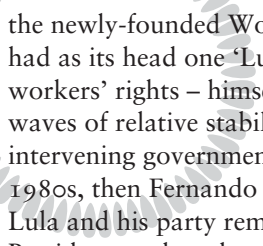
basis of trade, but the name of the brazilwood tree remained as the country's new adopted name (although it was subsequently changed on a number of occasions). During the mid-1550s, Portuguese sugar traders were fully involved in the African slave trade, 'importing' millions to work on the plantations. They considered the Africans hardier workers, less likely to fall ill than the indigenous peoples. The vast majority ended up in northern Brazil, where the African influence of the people, their culture, religion and music is still very much in evidence today. Salvador, in the region of Bahia (northeastern Brazil) is still the heart of black Afro-Brazilian culture. The north-Brazilian religion known as '**candomblé**' (sometimes likened by outsiders to voodoo) was born at this time: the slaves had brought their own beliefs and gods with them to Brazil, but were subjugated by their Catholic masters; masked by Catholic names, their gods lived a dual-existence until finally slavery was abolished in 1888, and now there is open acceptance of these overseas influences. Many Brazilians, of all creeds and colours, throw flowers into the sea on New Year's Eve, to the goddess Iemanjá, and wear white in her honour.

Having established the settlements in the mid-15th century, Portugal then spent almost a hundred years defending its outposts against French, and then, more significantly, Dutch attack. The Dutch, in fact, were a successful operation, and took much of the northeast, particularly the state of Pernambuco. They were a huge presence in that part of Brazil for a good 30 years, until eventually driven back in a series of bloody encounters. Despite their withdrawal from Brazil, they, too, left their mark, and it is not unusual in northeastern Brazil to see blonde-hair and green eyes alongside the distinct black of African roots. As well as having to deal with outside invasions, the Portuguese in Brazil soon found themselves facing a threat from inside the country too, in the form of bands of roaming 'explorers' calling themselves '**bandeirantes**' after the flag-bearers leading their troops. In search of new territories, and ruthless in their pursuit of it, they massacred many thousands of indigenous people themselves. In the midst of this belligerence, two important markers in Brazilian history were laid down: the bandeirantes were responsible for pushing the limits

of Brazilian territory westwards, gaining around 6 million square kilometres from the Spanish (who had made an agreement with the Portuguese back in 1494 to divide up the known world between them); it was also these marauding travellers who first ‘found’ gold, in the state of Minas Gerais, and in particular around the small town of Ouro Preto (*Black Gold*).

During the Napoleonic invasion of the Iberian peninsula during the 1800s, the Portuguese prince regent at the time, João VI, fled with his royal court, and took refuge in Rio. Liking his new-found territory so much, he declared himself ruler of the country, and on his accession to the Portuguese crown, he assumed kingship over Brazil too. It was in 1822 that Brazil finally became an empire liberated from the Portuguese crown, although ruled over by the prince regent Pedro, styling himself ‘Emperor’. However, it was only when Pedro’s young son, Pedro II, took over rule, that Brazil really started to prosper as an independent state. The 19th century saw the abolition of slavery, and the rise of the coffee bean as the new raw material to replace decreased exports of sugar. And by opening up its borders to allow foreigners in to work the coffee plantations, Brazil further expanded its melting pot of cultures that makes it one of the most interesting mixes of races today: Italians in their thousands, followed in subsequent decades by Japanese, Germans, Spanish and Chinese. There are huge Italian and Japanese communities in São Paulo, and Germanic influence is to be found in the south in towns such as Blumenau and its beer festivals. After the coffee ‘rush’ came the rubber, bringing great riches to the merchants of the Amazon region around Manaus, and Brazil’s ‘wealth’ was sealed.

The following 50 or 60 years brought a series of dictators out of the woodwork, with brutal killings and ‘disappearings’ the salient features of their rules. Many outspoken, liberal thinkers were rounded up in the middle of the night and families were never reunited with loved ones. Many died incarcerated; others were summarily executed, and the fate of many others is simply still not known. It was not until the 1970s and 1980s that opposition to these regimes gathered momentum and confidence to act. By 1980,



the newly-founded Workers Party (**partido dos trabalhadores**) had as its head one ‘Lula’ da Silva, an emblematic advocate of workers’ rights – himself a one-time factory worker. Despite waves of relative stability, then crippling spiralling inflation of the intervening governments of leaders including José Sarney in the 1980s, then Fernando Collor de Mello and Henrique Cardoso, Lula and his party remained firm, and finally in 2002 was elected President, and re-elected in 2009. With vows to rid Brazil of its endemic corruption, crime and poverty, Lula da Silva has brought a breath of fresh air to Brazilian, and world, politics. However, his is an unenviable task of re-distributing the wealth of one of the world’s largest economies: the vast majority of Brazil’s riches still lie in the hands of a very small minority and those on the lowest rung of life are still battling to climb up, surviving through drugs and violence. No small task, then.

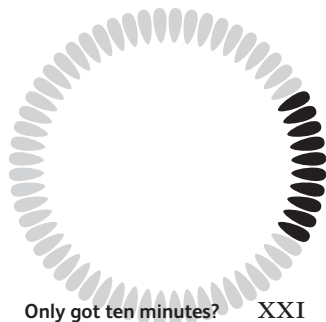
---

## The language

Portuguese is mainly a Latin language, and as such, follows many patterns evident in other Romance languages you may be familiar with. Its verbs, for example, are fully conjugated (have different endings for each person), and words such as nouns and adjectives change their endings (there are masculine and feminine words). If you have a good knowledge of French, Spanish or Italian, you will have no problem in approaching Portuguese, especially the written language. The main differences between the two variants (European/African and Brazilian) of the language are the pronunciation of certain sounds, and vocabulary. Some grammatical structures are also slightly different. A new spelling agreement, long in the making, has just come into place, with the aim of standardizing spelling across the whole Portuguese world. But wherever you are in Luso-world, you can generally make yourself understood, whichever variant you speak. And Brazilians are definitely easier to listen to than their European cousins, as Brazilians open vowel sounds more and speak with colourful intonation, that it makes listening to them a real delight.

For those people reading this with no prior experience of learning a language, Portuguese also has many words which are very similar to English. There are certain patterns of endings, such as **-ção** which is the equivalent of *-tion* in English, such as in the words for *station* and *cooperation* – **estação** and **cooperação**. Portuguese uses the same alphabet as English and the same script, so there are no strange symbols to learn. Brazilians also incorporate many English words into their everyday speech, sometimes giving them their slant on pronunciation; the words ‘shopping’ (shopping centre) and ‘short’ (shorts) are commonplace. Portuguese is now the world’s eighth most widely-used language on the Internet – it is a fully modern language with IT terminology, and even when you go back to some of its early writing, it is still fairly straightforward to read. It is the language of some fabulous literature, amazing Brazilian films, fantastic world music, and some of the most charming people you will meet anywhere. This publication, ***Complete Brazilian Portuguese***, is designed to take you through the structures that form the language, from the most basic up to more complex ideas. Along the way, you will pick up the confidence to start putting together your own sentences, and you will quite quickly be able to recognize the way the language works by reading newspapers and magazines. Over time the structure of the language will become more familiar, and when you are next in Brazil, take the time to look at signs and notices, try to analyse adverts you see and snippets of conversations you hear – at cafés, in shops, at the station – the more you relate back to the building-blocks you have been studying, the more you’ll learn!

**Boa Sorte!** *Good luck* and enjoy your Brazilian adventure.



Only got ten minutes?

XXI

---

# Personal introduction

Welcome to **Complete Brazilian Portuguese**. This course is designed to increase your all-round basic knowledge of the structures of Brazilian Portuguese, and how it all fits together in everyday conversations and transactions. It also gives you a range of insights into the way the language works, and handy tips on the culture of Brazil. The course is based on the travels of a visitor to Brazil, and as you accompany her trip around the vast country, you will take on board useful everyday vocabulary, and aspects of Brazilian life. During my teaching over the last 18 years, I have encountered many learners who wish to go beyond the basics of learning a few holiday phrases. However, many people were put off grammar at school, and often say to me ‘Do we have to learn any grammar in this class?’ My straight answer is always ‘Yes, you do!’ Without the basic building-blocks of how a language works, you can never go beyond learning phrases parrot-fashion. What happens next, when your well-rehearsed phrase is answered in full and you, in turn, cannot respond any further? This course is a steady mix of building up the basic structures of the language alongside handy phrases and interesting asides, and as such, aims to give you the freedom to construct the sort of sentences you want to say yourself when you are in Brazil. Created with beginners in mind, I have invested my many years’ experience of teaching and writing for adults into a course dedicated to supporting your progress through the structure of the Portuguese language, from a Brazilian perspective. You can dip into the course, as and when you feel like it, or follow it from start to finish. The more you work through the course, with its built-in exercises, the more familiar you will become with how Portuguese works, and the recordings allow you to hear authentic Brazilian Portuguese at an even pace. Don’t be afraid to have a go! The course adheres to the most recent Portuguese Spelling Reform currently being implemented across the Portuguese-speaking world.

*Good luck – Boa sorte!*  
Sue Tyson-Ward

---

# Introduction

This course is designed for the absolute beginner and requires no previous knowledge of any foreign language. The aim of the course is to enable you to use Brazilian Portuguese in everyday situations and also to provide some background information about Brazil and Brazilian culture.

The Portuguese of Brazil is different from that of Continental Portugal in three main ways: vocabulary, grammatical structures, and, most importantly, pronunciation. You could consider the two variants of the language in the same way as American and British English. It is widely considered that Brazilian Portuguese is actually easier to understand than European, as the Portuguese speak very quickly, with their mouths closed very much around the words, and they often ‘eat’ the beginning and ending of words. If you are learning Brazilian Portuguese, be assured that people will understand what you are saying (apart from the odd few words) throughout the Portuguese-speaking world. It is important for you to understand that you are learning not ‘Brazilian’, but ‘Brazilian Portuguese’. It is surprising how many people (including some native speakers) believe ‘Brazilian’ is actually a language. It is not; it is a *variant* of the Portuguese language.

Portuguese is not a difficult language to take on board if you have had some experience of another Latin-based (or Romance) language, such as French, Spanish or Italian. Pronunciation is the main area you will need to concentrate on. Many people erroneously believe that, as it looks like Spanish, it will sound that way too. Constant practice with the recording will help you improve in this respect. If you have no knowledge of a Romance language, or in fact, of any language, take heart – you are starting out with a clean slate and with no preconceptions which could mislead you.



The American influence on Brazil, via TV and other mass-media communications has resulted in various English words entering the Brazilian speaker's vocabulary; words such as *shopping*, *flat* and *short* (*shorts*) are commonplace today.

---

## How to use this book

Each of the 18 units is structured as follows:

**Introduction.** An introduction in English that explains what you will learn in the unit.

**Dialogue.** There are dialogues at the beginning of each chapter, and sometimes later on. Using the recording (where the symbol appears), listen to them first to check the pronunciation and see how much you understand, then read them carefully, and if necessary, listen again.

**Vocabulary.** The vocabulary section that follows each dialogue contains the new words and expressions that you will need to understand it.

**True or false?** These are statements about the texts in either English or Portuguese that may be true or false. The aim of these exercises is to check whether you have understood the text.


**Cultural tips:** Hints or tips – comments on life and society as well as background information on Brazil.

**Test yourself.** The important words and expressions used in the dialogues are repeated here, for you to test yourself. First, cover up the English and see if you can remember the meanings of the new Brazilian expressions. Once you can, try it the other way round, this time covering up the Brazilian.

**Grammar.** Notes explaining grammatical structures and how to create your own sentences.

**Exercises/Practices.** In these you practise the new words and information you have learnt.

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** Further dialogues and texts, testing your comprehension. These are not designed to test every word, but to give you the opportunity to ‘get the gist’ of a text.

The symbol  indicates material included on the accompanying recording.

The best way to make progress is to work a little every day. Listen to the recording and read the dialogues several times, learning the vocabulary before you start the exercises. Try to devise interesting ways to memorize the new words, such as through picture-images, songs, rhymes, etc.

**Complete Brazilian Portuguese** follows the journey of Sylvia Peters on a 6-month trip to Brazil, as she endeavours to make social, cultural and business links for future exchange. During the course of her journey you, like her, will visit some of Brazil’s most important cities, and be introduced to its people, history and culture. Initially, Sylvia will be the guest of the Ferreira family; José is a marine biologist, and Marli teaches Portuguese in a language school. Sylvia returns to their house before leaving Brazil for the UK.

---

# Glossary of grammatical terms

---

**accents** These are written marks above letters which affect either how that letter is pronounced, or at what point the word should be stressed (emphasized) when spoken. An accent can also be used to differentiate between two words with identical spellings but with different meanings. English does not use written accents (apart from on foreign words imported into the language), but many other languages do: e.g. *câmbio*, *fantástico*; *por* = *by/for* *pôr* = *to put*.

---

**adjectives** Words which describe, or give more information about, nouns. In Portuguese, adjectives match their endings to the nouns they are linked with (e.g. if they are singular/plural or masculine/feminine): e.g. *a cold cup of tea* / *that expensive coat* *um chá frio* / *aquele casaco caro*.

---

**adverbs** These are words which describe, or tell us more about, how an action (verb) is being carried out. They often answer the question HOW? They are also used to describe adjectives more fully, and you can use two adverbs together too. Often in English, an adverb has the ending ‘-ly’ on it: e.g. *He sings loudly*. / *They ran incredibly quickly*. *Canta altamente*. / *Correram incrivelmente rapidamente*.

---

**articles** Words which go with nouns – definite articles are the words for ‘the’, and indefinite articles are the words for ‘a/an/some’. In Portuguese there are different words corresponding to the number and gender (masculine/feminine): *o/a/os/as* (definite) and *um/uma/uns/umas* (indefinite).

---

**clause** A group of words which also contains a verb: e.g. *before we go out ...* / *if she swims well ...* *antes de sairmos ...* / *se ela nadar bem ...*

---

**comparative** Forms of adjectives and adverbs used to make comparisons, e.g. *fatter* / *more slowly* *mais gordo* / *mais devagar*.

---

.....  
**demonstratives** The words used for pointing things out – *this / that / these / those este / esse / aquele / estes* etc.  
.....

**imperative** A form of verb, known as a mood, used when giving commands: *Eat your dinner! Come o jantar!*  
.....

**infinitive** The part of the verb referred to in English as ‘to ...’, and the form found in the dictionary before you change any of its endings: *to speak / to drink / to leave falar / beber / partir*.  
.....

**interrogatives** Question forms, e.g. *where? / which? onde? / qual?*  
.....

**nouns** A noun is any thing, person or abstract idea in existence – everything around us is a noun of some kind. A noun can be singular (just one), or plural (more than one). In Portuguese, nouns are also divided into masculine and feminine words: e.g. *table / horses / man–men / happiness mesa / cavalos / homem–homens / felicidade*.  
.....

**number** Whether a word is singular (just one), or plural (more than one).  
.....

**object** The person or thing on the receiving end of the action of a verb. Objects can be ‘direct’ – i.e. they directly receive the action of the verb – or ‘indirect’ – where they receive the results of the action, through indirect means: e.g. *She gives money every week* (‘money’ is direct object) / *she gives them money every week*. (‘them’ is indirect object) *Dá dinheiro todas as semanas. / Dá-lhes dinheiro ...*  
.....

**phrase** A group of words which together have some meaning: e.g. *in the square / after mid-day na praça / depois de meio-dia*.  
.....

**possessives** Words showing ownership or possession, e.g. *my car / it’s ours o meu carro / é nosso*.  
.....

**prefix** A number of letters which may be added to the beginning of a word, which change its meaning in some way: e.g. *possible – impossible / possível – impossível*.  
.....

.....  
**prepositions** These are words which denote the ‘position’ of someone or something in time or place: e.g. *on top of the cupboard / before going out / at six o’clock em cima do armário / antes de sair / às seis horas.*  
.....

**pronouns** These are words which take the place of a noun (pro = for), so that you do not need to keep repeating the actual noun itself each time you want to refer to it. There are various types of pronoun, all of which you will learn about in Portuguese: e.g. *Maria is very kind. She looks after my cat. She gives it lots of treats. (A) Maria / Ela / -lhe.*  
.....

**reflexive verbs** Actions with a bearing on the subject of the verb – actions are carried out by, and also on, the subject, i.e. they ‘reflect’ back to the person carrying out the action. In English reflexive verbs carry the word ‘self’ with them. A number of verbs in Portuguese are reflexive where you would not expect them to be in English: e.g. *Enjoy yourselves! / She gets herself dressed each morning. Divertam-se! / Veste-se cada manhã.*  
.....

**sentence** A group of words, with a beginning, an end, and a finite verb (see below), which has a meaning. A sentence may have any number of separate clauses, but one of these will be the main clause, which can make sense in its own right as a sentence: e.g. *She wants to visit America. / If you go there, you should not drink the water. Ela quer visitar os Estados Unidos. / Se for lá, não deveria beber a água.*  
.....

**subject** The person or thing carrying out the action of a verb: e.g. *My brother wants to be a teacher. / Our dog always chases spiders. O meu irmão ... / O nosso cachorro ...*  
.....

**subjunctive mood** A separate set of verb endings for use in certain situations, such as in ‘if’ clauses, or with expressions of doubt: e.g. *I doubt he’s coming Duvido que ele venha.*  
.....

**suffix** A number of letters which may be added to the end of a word, which change the meaning or the type of grammatical word it is: e.g. *sad – sadness / glad – gladly triste – tristeza / feliz – felizmente.*

.....  
**superlative** The form of an adjective or adverb denoting the highest or lowest level, e.g. *the fastest car / the cheapest shoes o carro mais rápido / os sapatos mais baratos.*  
.....

**syllable** This is a part of a word containing one, two, or more letters which are clumped together so that we can divide up the word as we say it: e.g. *cho-co-late / mag-ni-fi-cent cho-co-la-te / mag-ní-fi-co.*  
.....

**tenses** These are the time references for when verbs are taking place. There are different tenses in the present, past and future – you will learn what these are in Portuguese. Some of them have different names in Portuguese grammar from what they might be termed in English – don't worry too much about the actual terminology; concentrate on learning which verb endings to use in what circumstances: e.g. *She had not wanted to go to the party. / Will we have saved enough money? Não tinha querido ir à festa. / Teremos poupado dinheiro suficiente?*  
.....

**verbs** Verbs convey actions or states of being, or sometimes abstract states. Verbs have an 'infinitive' form, which tells you the name of the verb itself, but no other information – it is the form you will find in the dictionary, and relates to the English 'TO do something'. A sentence must have a verb in a 'finite' form – which tells you what the action is, who is doing it, and at what point in time (in the past, present or future). English does not change many of its verb endings, but Portuguese, as many languages, has different endings for the person doing the action, and the time, or tense: e.g. *She goes home at 5 o'clock. / I watched TV last night. Ela volta para casa às cinco. / Vi a televisão ontem à noite.*  
.....

---

# Pronunciation

🔊 **CD1, TR 1, 01:10**

Although this book can successfully be used on its own, the purchase of the recording will enhance both your pronunciation and your comprehension abilities as well as giving you the opportunity for aural revision.

In native Portuguese words there is no **k**, **w**, or **y**, although they appear in imported words. Pronunciation in Brazil varies from region to region, as it may do in any country. There are certain distinct sounds in Rio which mark the speaker as a ‘Carioca’ (a native of Rio), e.g. the **de** sound at the end of a word pronounced as **gee**.

The whole Portuguese alphabet is as follows. If you have the recording, listen to how it sounds when recited in Portuguese.

a b c d e f g h i j (k) l m n o p q r s t u v (w) x (y) z

---

## Portuguese vowels

Portuguese vowel sounds are tricky to imitate, as there are nasal sounds, and sounds differ depending on where the vowel is in any given word. However, Brazilians do open their mouths wider than the Portuguese, and are therefore theoretically easier to understand! Here is a general idea:

a, as in *rather* – **falar**  
ã, as in *rang* – **irmã**.  
e, as in *bell* – **certo**  
i, as in *mean* – **partida**  
o, as in *saw* – **nova**  
u, as in *boot* – **durmo**

or as in *abide* – **mesa**  
This is a nasal sound.  
or as in *madden* – **pesar**  
or as in *cigar* – **emigrar**  
or as in *boot* – **sapato**  
or as in *bull* – **mudar**

---

## Portuguese consonants

Portuguese consonants also differ from the English sounds in different situations. Follow the table on the recording, if you have it, as each consonant is given an English equivalent, and a Portuguese example:

Consonant	English sound	Portuguese sound
b	<i>ball</i>	bonito
c + e/i, ç	<i>sat</i>	cem, começa
c + a/o/u	<i>can</i>	comer
ch	<i>shout</i>	chocolate
d	<i>dab/‘gee’</i>	dar or cidade
f	<i>fun</i>	falar
g + e/i	<i>pleasure</i>	geléia
g + a/o/u	<i>got</i>	pagar
h	‘silent’	hotel
j	<i>pleasure</i>	julho
l	<i>last</i>	livre
lh	<i>billion</i>	mulher
m	<i>map</i>	mesa
n	<i>nod</i>	nadar
nh	<i>onion</i>	vinho
p	<i>pin</i>	parar
q(u)	<i>quart</i>	quando
q(u) + e/i	‘silent u’	quem
r (initial)	‘aspirated’	rio
r	<i>ran</i>	compram
s	<i>sat</i>	sol
s + vowels	<i>zoo</i>	casa
t	<i>tap</i>	todo
v	‘as in English’	vida
x	<i>shout</i>	baixa
z	<i>zoo</i>	fazer



---

## Spelling

Portuguese uses the Roman alphabet, as do English and other Latin-based languages. However, the letters **k**, **w** and **y** do not naturally occur in Portuguese words – only in imported foreign words and in abbreviations for weights, measures and chemicals, e.g. 10 kg (= 10 **quilos**). However, they have now been accepted into the official alphabet.

- ▶ The only double consonants you will find are **rr** and **ss**, which both change the sound from the single letter, plus **cc**, **mm** and **nn** (all less common).
- ▶ There are three extra ‘sounds’ or letter combinations you will come across a lot: **ch**, **lh**, **nh**. They are known as *diágrafos* – two letters with one sound. For readers with a background in Spanish, **lh** is similar in sound to Spanish *ll*, and **nh** is like *ñ*. **ch** is pronounced *sh* and not *ch* as in Spanish.
- ▶ **h** is always silent in Portuguese, thus sometimes making it difficult when listening to discern whether a word begins with a vowel or an **h**. As any dictionary will illustrate, there are in fact a number of words starting with **h**, so learning obvious ones will help – and many are similar to English so you can train yourself to think logically when listening, e.g. **o Otel Miramar** or **o Hotel Miramar**?
- ▶ A quick note about the consonants **c**, **g** and **q**, which change their pronunciation depending on which vowels follow them. This can be a stumbling block for the uninitiated, hence some basic rules here:

**c** before a / o / u = hard sound, like cat

**ç** (c + cedilla – see section on accents) before a / o / u = soft sound, like face

**c** before e / i = soft, like face

**g** before e / i = soft, like the s sound in treasure

g before a / o / u = hard, like in goal

g + u before e / i = ‘silent’ u, e.g. guitarra [ghee... not gwee...].

There are some exceptions (there always are!), such as **linguiça** (spicy sausage) [lingwiça].

q is always followed by u.

qu before e / i = ‘silent’ u, e.g. máquina (*machine*) [mákeena not mákweena]; again there are some exceptions (e.g. cinquenta (*fifty*) [cinkwenta]).

qu before o / a = kw, e.g. quadro (picture) [kwadro]

- **ph** does not exist in Portuguese; those words similar to English have an f – the same sound, but be careful with the spelling: e.g. filósofo = *philosopher*.

---

## Brazilian spelling

After many years of wrangling over spelling throughout the Portuguese-speaking world (and most particularly between Portugal and Brazil), up-to-date orthographic (spelling) agreements have now been agreed under the new Acordo Ortográfico. There are still some differences in spelling between the two main variants of the language, Brazilian and Luso-African, which includes those African countries with Portuguese as an official language.

Changes that have been agreed will still take a number of years to implement in all written material. This current edition of **Complete Brazilian Portuguese** complies with the new Acordo.

---

## Punctuation / Pontuação

Just for reference, here are the names of some of the more common features of punctuation – they are useful in dictation!

.	ponto final	!	ponto de exclamação
,	vírgula	...	reticências
;	ponto e vírgula	«...» or “...”	aspas / vírgulas altas (comas)
:	dois pontos	( )	parênteses
?	ponto de interrogação	–	travessão

Students of Spanish should note that Portuguese does not have an upside-down ? or ! at the start of sentences.

## Accents

You will find the following written accents in Portuguese:

´	acute accent	acento agudo	opens vowel sound and indicates stress*	gramática
^	circumflex	circunflexo	closes vowel sound and indicates stress	português
~	tilde	til	nasalizes vowel and usually indicates stress	amanhã
`	grave accent	acento grave	opens vowel, non-stressing, indicates a contraction of two words: preposition <b>a</b> and feminine forms of the definite article and the demonstrative pronouns and adjectives	àquele

\*Stress is the part of the word you emphasize when you say it.

There are also: **ç**, *c-cedilla* (**cedilha**), which makes the c soft, and the ‘dieresis’ (trema), **ü**, in words of foreign origin, such as **mülleriano** (*Müller-like*).

---

## Stress

Portuguese words are classified into three groups in terms of where the stress (emphasis) falls:

- 1** = last syllable
- 2** = penultimate (next to last) syllable
- 3** = antepenultimate syllable

The majority belong to group 2 and do not usually require a written accent. The written accent occurs to enable words to be correctly stressed when they have deviated from the usual stress pattern. Whenever you see a written accent, that is where you should emphasize the word when you say it. Words also carry a written stress mark to distinguish them from a word with the same spelling but a different meaning, e.g. **por** (*by*) and **pôr** (*to put*).

The above is a very basic guide to the concept of stress; for a fuller treatment of all the rules refer to the pronunciation guides in courses and dictionaries, and listen to how words are said when you are in Brazil. The best way to learn how to write the words correctly, though, is by practice, and that includes reading in the language and spotting spellings, as well as noting down new words as you acquire them. So, on with the rest of the book to do just that ...

## A few tips to help you acquire an authentic accent

It is not absolutely vital to acquire a perfect accent. The aim is to be understood; here are a number of techniques for working on your pronunciation:

- 1** Listen carefully to the recording or a native speaker or teacher. Whenever possible repeat aloud imagining you are a native speaker of Portuguese.
- 2** Record yourself and compare your pronunciation with that of a native speaker.
- 3** Ask native speakers to listen to your pronunciation and tell you how to improve it.
- 4** Ask native speakers how a specific sound is formed. Watch them and practise at home in front of a mirror.

Make a list of words that give you pronunciation trouble and practise them.

# 1

## Seu passaporte, por favor Your passport, please

In this unit you will learn

- *How to identify people*
- *How to introduce yourself and address people*
- *How to say hello and goodbye*
- *How to check into your hotel*

### Dialogue 1

Sylvia Peters arrives in Brazil and passes through Customs (Alfândega).

<b>Inspetor</b>	Bom dia. Seu passaporte, por favor.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Aqui está.
<b>Inspetor</b>	Você é inglesa, não é?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim, sou.
<b>Inspetor</b>	Muito bem. Quanto tempo vai passar aqui?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Seis meses.
<b>Inspetor</b>	Está bem. Obrigado. Tchau.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Bom dia, obrigada.

**bom dia** *hello, good morning (also goodbye)*

**aqui, cá** *here*

**está** *(it) is*

CD 1, TR 2, 00:11

QV

**seu** *your*  
**você** *you*  
**passaporte (o)** *passport*  
**é** *is/are*  
**por favor** *please*  
**inglesa** *English (woman)*  
**não é?** *isn't it/is that so?*  
**tempo (o)** *time*  
**não** *no, not*  
**seis** *six*  
**sim** *yes*  
**meses (os)** *months*  
**sou** *I am*  
**está bem** *OK*  
**muito bem** *very well*  
**obrigado/a** *thank you*  
**vai passar** *you're going to spend*  
**tchau** *see you/bye*  
**quanto?** *how much?*

### True or false?

Tick true (*verdadeiro*) or false (*falso*) for the following statements based on the dialogue.

V F

- a** Sylvia Peters is American.
- b** She's going to spend six weeks in Brazil.
- c** She arrives in the morning.

---

## Grammar

### To be

In Portuguese there are two verbs both meaning **to be**:

**Ser** is used for permanent characteristics, such as nationality. **Estar** is used more for temporary states and locations.

In the dialogue you saw examples of both verbs:

<b>aqui está</b>	<i>here it is</i>	<b>estar</b>
<b>você é inglesa</b>	<i>you are English</i>	<b>ser</b>
<b>sim, sou</b>	<i>yes, I am</i>	<b>ser</b>
<b>está bem</b>	<i>that's OK</i>	<b>estar</b>

You will come across more examples, and find out other ways in which the verbs are used, as you work through the units.

*Forms of address:* **você**

In Brazil, most people call each other *you* using the word **você**. However, there are certain situations where more, or less, formality in address is called for. Look at the table below to see how these differences work.

<i>Situation</i>	<i>Formal 'you'</i>	<i>Informal 'you'</i>
With strangers, people in higher social/work position	<b>o senhor</b> (to man) <b>a senhora</b> (to woman)	
With friends, colleagues, family		<b>você/tu</b> (some parts of Brazil)
With older people	<b>o senhor/a senhora</b>	

**Você** and **tu** are examples of what are called *personal pronouns* – the words for *I, you, he*, etc.

### Personal pronouns

The Portuguese personal pronouns are used to denote which person is carrying out the action of a verb. They are:

<b>eu</b>	<i>I</i>	<b>nós</b>	<i>we</i>
<b>(tu)</b>	<i>you</i> [used only in some parts of Brazil]		
<b>ele</b>	<i>he/it</i>	<b>eles</b>	<i>they</i> (male)
<b>ela</b>	<i>she/it</i>	<b>elas</b>	<i>they</i> (female)
<b>você</b>	<i>you</i>	<b>vocês</b>	<i>you</i> (plural)



These are referred to as *subject pronouns*, but they are not necessarily used all the time; in many instances the endings of the verbs will suffice to tell you who is doing the action. In the dialogue you had:

<b>é inglesa</b>	<i>you are English</i>
<b>sim, sou</b>	<i>yes, I am</i>

You will learn more of verbs later on.

### Male/female

In Portuguese, everything you see around you is divided into two groups: masculine and feminine. This is because Portuguese is a language with its roots in Latin, and the Romans used a language system based on words linking together, usually in a logical way (although it may not seem so to many learners!). So, for example, *table* happens to be a feminine word, and *floor* is a masculine one. In most cases you can tell which group a word belongs to by its ending: an **-o** for masculine words, and an **-a** for feminine ones, although this is not always the case. A dictionary will guide you when you are first learning, and look for help in the vocabulary lists, until you start to get a feel for the different endings. In our vocabulary boxes, we have used **o/a** and their plurals **os/as** to show you what 'gender' a word is.

### Obrigado/a

You will have noticed in the dialogue that the Customs official says **Obrigado**, and Sylvia replies **Obrigada**, both meaning *Thank you*. All men should use the first and women the second, regardless of whom they are addressing. This is because **Obrigado** is an adjective – a word of description, which is applied to the person expressing their gratitude – as in the outdated English (*I am*) *much obliged*. Another adjective you came across was **inglesa** (*English woman*). The masculine is **inglês** (*English man*). More on nationalities in Unit 2.

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia arrives and checks in at the hotel where she will be staying before going to the Ferreira home.

<b>Sylvia</b>	Boa tarde. Sou Sylvia Peters. Tem um apartamento reservado em meu nome?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Um momento. Como se escreve seu sobrenome?
<b>Sylvia</b>	P-e-t-e-r-s. Peters.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Ah, sim, aqui está. A senhora Peters, de Manchester.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Isso.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Um apartamento com banheiro para três dias, sim?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim.
<b>Rececionista</b>	É o apartamento número quinze, no primeiro andar. Aqui tem a chave.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Muito obrigada.
<b>Rececionista</b>	De nada.

CD1, TR 2, 01:06

**boa tarde** *hello, good afternoon*  
**tem?** *do you have?*  
**apartamento (o)** *hotel room*  
**reservado** *reserved*  
**em meu nome** *in my name*  
**um momento** *just a second*  
**como se escreve?** *how do you write it?*  
**sobrenome (o)** *surname*  
**de** *of, from*  
**isso** *that's it*  
**com** *with*  
**banheiro (o)** *bathroom*  
**para** *for*  
**três** *three*  
**dias (os)** *days*  
**número (o)** *number*

QUICK VOCAB

**quinze** *fifteen*

**no primeiro andar** *on the first floor*

**chave (a)** *key*

**muito obrigada** *thanks very much*

**de nada** *don't mention it*

### Exercise 1

Tick **a** or **b** to complete the following statements.

- |                                |                 |                     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| <b>1</b> Sylvia Peters is from | <b>a</b> London | <b>b</b> Manchester |
| <b>2</b> She's going to stay   | <b>a</b> 8 days | <b>b</b> 3 days     |
| <b>3</b> Her room number is    | <b>a</b> 15     | <b>b</b> 12         |

---

## Grammar

### A, an

The Portuguese words for *a (an)* are:

**um** (used with masculine words) **um apartamento** *a room*

**uma** (used with feminine words) **uma chave** *a key*

With more than one (i.e., in the plural), the words become:

**uns** (used with masculine plural words)

**uns apartamentos** *some rooms*

**umas** (used with feminine plural words)

**umas chaves** *some keys*

### The

Similarly, Portuguese has four words to convey the English word *the*:

**o** *masculine singular* **o apartamento** *the room*

**a** *feminine singular* **a chave** *the key*

os *masculine plural* os apartamentos *the rooms*  
as *feminine plural* as chaves *the keys*

## Plural nouns

When you have more than one item (noun), the basic way to form the plural is to add an -s, as in the examples above:

o apartamento os apartamentos  
a chave as chaves

Beware of irregularities, which abound in Portuguese, such as  
o mês (*month*) os meses (*months*).

## Numbers

### 🔊 CD1, TR 2, 02:14

Here are the numbers 0 to 20, some of which have appeared in the first two dialogues.

0 zero	
1 um, uma	11 onze
2 dois, duas	12 doze
3 três	13 treze
4 quatro	14 catorze (quatorze)
5 cinco	15 quinze
6 seis	16 dezesseis
7 sete	17 dezessete
8 oito	18 dezoito
9 nove	19 dezenove
10 dez	20 vinte

Numbers *one* and *two* have both a masculine and a feminine form, so if you are talking about two houses, it's **duas casas**.

## Dialogue 3

Sylvia pops out in the evening to meet up with the Ferreiras. She knows José but has not yet met Mrs Ferreira.

- José** Boa noite, Sylvia, tudo bem?  
**Sylvia** Oi, José, tudo bem.  
**José** Sylvia, esta é minha mulher Marli.  
**Sylvia** Muito prazer.  
**Marli** Igualmente. Bem-vinda a São Paulo. Como está?  
**Sylvia** Bem, obrigada.  
**José** Bom, vamos sentar? Que vão tomar?

**boa noite** *hello, good evening/night*

**tudo bem(?)** *everything OK(?)*

**oi** *Hi*

**esta (f)** *this*

**minha mulher** *my wife*

**muito prazer** *pleased to meet you*

**igualmente** *likewise*

**bem-vinda a São Paulo** *welcome to São Paulo*

**bom** *right then*

**vamos** *shall we/let's*

**sentar** *to sit down*

**que vão tomar?** *what are you going to have (to drink)?*

### Exercise 2

Can you fill in the missing words from these statements?

**a** \_\_\_\_\_ noite. Tudo \_\_\_\_\_?

**b** Esta \_\_\_\_\_ minha mulher.

**c** \_\_\_\_\_ prazer.

---

## Grammar

### This, these

When identifying people, or things, or when pointing them out, the words for *this (these)* are:

**este** (masculine person/thing) *this*   **esta** (feminine person/thing) *this*  
**estes** (masculine plural)      *these*   **estas** (feminine plural) *these*

**este apartamento** *this room*      **estes apartamentos** *these rooms*  
**esta chave** *this key*      **estas chaves** *these keys*

### Possession: my, your, etc.

In the dialogues you were introduced to some of the possessive words: **seu** *your*, **minha** *my*. Here is the full table for *my* and *your*:

		Singular		Plural	
		masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
<i>my</i>	<b>meu</b>		<b>minha</b>	<b>meus</b>	<b>minhas</b>
<i>your</i>	<b>seu</b>		<b>sua</b>	<b>seus</b>	<b>suas</b>

The possessive word links to the item being possessed, and NOT the person to whom it belongs; therefore to say *my key*, you need to know that *key* is a feminine word; then choose **minha** from the table; **minha chave** = *my key*. Similarly, to say *your rooms*, you need to know that *room* is a masculine word, and it is in the plural, hence **seus apartamentos**. You will learn more possessives as you progress. Note that sometimes you will hear (or see) the possessive forms expressed as, for example: **A sua chave**; **OS seus apartamentos**; with the appropriate word for *the* going with the possessed item.

**(O) meu passaporte** *my passport*      **(AS) suas chaves** *your keys*

## Questions, questions

To ask basic questions in Portuguese, all you have to do is raise your voice in a questioning tone at the end of a statement: **Tudo bem, OK. Tudo bem? OK?**

You can also ‘tag’ question-phrases on to statements, e.g. **Você é inglesa, não é? *You’re English, aren’t you?* Um apartamento para três dias, sim? *A room for three days, yes?***

There are also question-words, known as interrogatives, with which you can begin a question. So far you have met:

**Quanto?** *How much?*

**Como?** *How?*

**Que?** *What?*

---

### Test yourself

<b>bom dia</b>	<i>hello/good morning/goodbye</i>
<b>boa tarde</b>	<i>hello/good afternoon/goodbye</i>
<b>boa noite</b>	<i>hello/good evening/goodnight</i>
<b>oi</b>	<i>hi/hello</i>
<b>tudo bem?</b>	<i>how are things?/everything OK?</i>
<b>como está?</b>	<i>how are you?</i>
<b>tudo bem</b>	<i>fine/OK</i>
<b>bem obrigado/a</b>	<i>well, thanks</i>
<b>tchau</b>	<i>see you/bye</i>
<b>muito prazer</b>	<i>pleased to meet you</i>

---

### Insight

#### Greeting people

Brazilians are very tactile, open, friendly people, and it is common for them to kiss each other on greeting and saying goodbye. Men often shake hands with each other. Take your cue from their behaviour towards you and those around you.

---

## Insight

### Brazilian police

Brazilian police at airports, border patrols, and in general, are not to be messed about with! Make sure you have all your documentation in order (passport, visa, travel documents, driving licence, addresses of where you are staying). It is not unheard of for police to routinely check your vehicle and, inevitably, find something wrong with it. Often they are looking for a bribe, but you must be very careful here, as some travellers proffering money inside their passport have then been fined for so doing! The best policy, in many cases, is to keep quiet and pay the fine.

## Practice

- 1 Now see if you can do the following:
  - a say *good morning, good afternoon, good evening*
  - b say *thank you, goodbye* (casually)
  - c say who you are
  - d ask if there is a room reserved in your name
  - e say *Hi, how are things?*

- 2 Give your part of the dialogue at the airport.

<b>Inspetor</b>	Boa tarde. Seu passaporte por favor.
<b>You</b>	(Say <i>here it is.</i> )
<b>Inspetor</b>	Você é inglês/inglesa?
<b>You</b>	(Say <i>yes I am.</i> )
<b>Inspetor</b>	Vai passar quanto tempo aqui?
<b>You</b>	(Say <i>eight days.</i> )
<b>Inspetor</b>	Muito bem. Tchau.
<b>You</b>	(Say <i>goodbye.</i> )

- 3 Work out the answers to these sums and write them out in words in Portuguese.
  - a dois e (and) cinco =
  - b oito e seis =








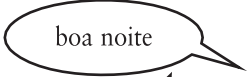
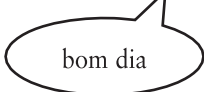

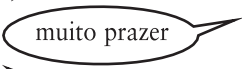
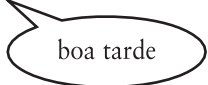
- c dezenove menos (minus) dois =  
 d um e dez =  
 e vinte menos sete =

CD1, TR 2, 03:52

- 4 Look at the Bingo card below, and listen for your numbers being called out on the tape. Cross off any you hear, then write out in words in Portuguese the two you are left with.

12	3	18
6	10	9

- 5 Look at the pictures and link them to what people are saying.

<p>a </p> <p>b </p> <p>c </p> <p>d </p> <p>e </p>	<p>i </p> <p>ii </p> <p>iii </p> <p>iv </p> <p>v </p>
---	---

CD1, TR 2, 04:30

- 6 Listen to the dialogue in the hotel, and tick the appropriate answers to the questions.

- |                            |                                      |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a What is the man's name?  | John Harris <input type="checkbox"/> | John Peters <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Where is he from?        | London <input type="checkbox"/>      | Liverpool <input type="checkbox"/>   |
| c How long is he staying?  | 6 months <input type="checkbox"/>    | 6 days <input type="checkbox"/>      |
| d What is his room number? | 12 <input type="checkbox"/>          | 2 <input type="checkbox"/>           |

---

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the following hotel booking-in form, and answer the questions that follow.

<i>HOTEL SÃO LUÍS</i>	
NOME:	<i>Senhor T. Andrews</i>
LUGAR DE ORIGEM:	<i>Londres</i>
Nº DE DIAS:	<i>Seis</i>
TIPO DE APTº:	<i>Com banheiro</i>
Nº DE APTº:	<i>treze</i>

- 1 Is the guest male or female?
- 2 S/he is from Italy. True or false?
- 3 S/he is staying six days. True or false?
- 4 What type of room has s/he got?
- 5 S/he is in room no. 12. True or false?

# 2

## Você é casada?

### Are you married?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to talk about yourself and your family*
- *How to talk about your home town*
- *How to give your address and telephone number*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia and the Ferreiras are sitting in a cafe in São Paulo. They are getting to know each other a bit better. The waiter (**o garçom**) brings their order.

CD1, TR 3, 00:10

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| <b>Garçom</b> | Vamos ver. Um chope para o senhor Ferreira, um cafezinho para a senhora Ferreira, e um vinho tinto para a senhora. |
| <b>José</b>   | Obrigado.  |
| <b>Marli</b>  | Você é de Manchester, não é?   |
| <b>Sylvia</b> | Sim, sou.  |
| <b>Marli</b>  | E como é a cidade de Manchester?   |
| <b>Sylvia</b> | Bem, é grande e muito movimentada.   |
| <b>Marli</b>  | Sylvia, você é casada? Tem filhos?   |
| <b>Sylvia</b> | Sim, tenho dois, um filho e uma filha.   |
| <b>Marli</b>  | Como eles se chamam?   |

- Sylvia** Meu filho se chama Robert. Ele tem dezesseis anos e é estudante. Minha filha se chama Clare, tem vinte e três anos e é casada.
- Marli** E seu marido? Qual é o nome dele?
- Sylvia** Meu marido se chama Tony e ele trabalha numa empresa internacional que fabrica produtos químicos. E você, Marli, trabalha?
- Marli** Sim, sou professora de português numa escola de línguas. E você?
- Sylvia** Eu também trabalho – para uma empresa interessante; sou advogada.

**vamos ver** *let's see*  
**um chope** *a draught lager*  
**cafezinho (o)** *espresso coffee*  
**vinho tinto (o)** *red wine*  
**como é ...?** *what's ... like?*  
**cidade (a)** *city/town*  
**grande** *large*  
**movimentado** *busy*  
**casada** *married*  
**filhos (os)** *children*  
**tenho** *I have*  
**filho (o)** *son*  
**filha (a)** *daughter*  
**como eles se chamam?** *what are they called?*  
**se chama** *is called*  
**ele/ela tem ... anos** *he/she is ... years old*  
**vinte e três** *23*  
**estudante (o/a)** *student*  
**marido** *husband*  
**qual é o nome (dele)?** *what is (his) name?*  
**trabalha** *work(s)*  
**numa empresa** *in a company*  
**que** *that, which*  
**fabrica** *makes/produces*  
**produtos químicos (os)** *chemicals*

**professora (a)** *teacher*  
**português** *Portuguese*  
**numa escola** *in a school*  
**línguas (as)** *languages*  
**também trabalho** *I also work*  
**internacional** *international*  
**interessante** *interesting*  
**advogada (a)** *lawyer*

### True or false?

Say if these statements are **verdadeiro** or **falso**.

V      F

- a** Sylvia is having beer.
  - b** Sylvia has three children.
  - c** Sylvia's daughter is married.
  - d** Marli is a maths teacher.
  - e** Sylvia is a lawyer.
- 

## Grammar

### Describing places and people

You met adjectives (describing words) briefly in the first unit. Now let's have a look at them in more detail. Generally speaking, adjectives in Portuguese, unlike in English, go after the thing or person they are describing, e.g. **uma empresa internacional** *an international company*. This does not apply if you are talking about something introduced by the verb *to be* e.g. **Londres é grande** *London is big*, where the word order is the same as in English.

The important point to remember is that if you are describing something (or someone) that is feminine, or in the plural, you must make the adjective match it by changing its ending – this is known

as ‘agreement of the adjective and noun’. Many adjectives end in -o (the masculine standard), such as **movimentado**. Look how it changes: **movimentado, movimentada, movimentados, movimentadas**. A busy city is **uma cidade movimentada** (fem), and two busy countries are **dois países movimentados** (masculine, plural).

Be on the look-out for irregular-ending words. In the dialogue you had **grande, interessante** and **internacional**:

m	f	mpl	fpl
<b>grande</b>	<b>grande</b>	<b>grandes</b>	<b>grandes</b>
<b>interessante</b>	<b>interessante</b>	<b>interessantes</b>	<b>interessantes</b>
<b>internacional</b>	<b>internacional</b>	<b>internacionais</b>	<b>internacionais</b>

Here are some adjectives you may want to use to describe your town (*town/city* = **a cidade** = fem.).

You will meet more adjectives as you progress.

<b>pequeno</b> <i>small</i>	<b>lindo/bonito</b> <i>pretty</i>
<b>barulhento</b> <i>noisy</i>	<b>industrial</b> <i>industrial</i>
<b>histórico</b> <i>historic(al)</i>	<b>litoral</b> <i>coastal</i>
<b>sossegado</b> <i>quiet</i>	<b>sujo</b> <i>dirty</i>
<b>cultural</b> <i>cultural</i>	<b>agricultural</b> <i>agricultural</i>

### Ter *To have*

You have now met various parts of the verb **ter** *to have*. Here it is in full for you to learn:

<b>(eu) tenho</b>	<i>I have</i>	<b>(nós) temos</b>	<i>we have</i>
<b>(tu) tens*</b>	<i>you have</i>		
<b>(ele/ela) tem</b>	<i>he/she/it has</i>	<b>(eles/elas) têm</b>	<i>they have</i>
<b>(você) tem</b>	<i>you have</i>	<b>(vocês) têm</b>	<i>you have (plural)</i>

\*As this form is used in only some parts of Brazil, henceforth we shall concentrate on just four verbal forms. You will hear some Brazilians

use **tu** plus the verb for **você**. Whilst being grammatically incorrect, it is nevertheless a colloquially recognized usage in some areas.

Note that **Ter** is used when you talk about your age, and not the verb *To be*, e.g. *I am 15* = **Tenho 15 anos**.

### **What is/are your/their name/s?**

There are different ways to express names in Portuguese. You can say:

**Qual é (seu) nome?** *What is (your) name?* Or **Como (você) se chama?** *What are (you) called?* Or even **Quem é (você)?** *Who are (you)/Who is...?*

Answers may be: **(meu) nome é ...** *(my) name is ...* Or **me chamo/ se chama ...** *(I) am/.....is called ...* Or **sou/é ...** *I am/s/he is ...*

In the dialogue you were introduced to:

**Como eles se chamam?** *What are they called?*, and **Qual é o nome dele?** *What is his name?* Both of these are dealt with in following sections.

### **Verbs – present tense**

In Portuguese, the ending of the verb (the action word) changes according to whoever is carrying out the action (the verb's subject). It is vital to get straight at this point the fact that it does not matter if the person is male or female, but whether they are 1st person (*I, we*), 2nd (*you*) or 3rd (*he, she, it, they*). Many people become confused when first approaching these verb forms, as they have just managed to master the concept of the **o/a** endings for male and female nouns and adjectives. Although these endings also appear on some verbs, they are NOT related to gender. In Portuguese there are three main groups of verbs, as well as a variety of irregular oddities. The main groups are: Group 1 ending in **ar** – the most common; Group 2 ending in **er**; Group 3 ending in **ir**. The last

two are very similar in endings. With only a few exceptions, all these verbs are formed in the same way:

Let's take a verb that you met in the dialogue and see what changes happen to it when we want different people to carry out the action.

You had examples of the verb to work (**trabalhar**): **trabalho** – *I work* and **trabalha** – *he works/you work*.

- ▶ First you take off the (-ar) ending and you are left with what is called the stem, e.g. **trabalhar** (*to work*) – **trabalh**.
- ▶ Then you add on to this stem the appropriate ending according to whoever is doing the action.
- ▶ For -ar verbs, the endings you require are as follows:

**stem +**

<b>-o</b>	<i>I</i>	<b>trabalho</b>
<b>-a</b>	<i>he, she, it, you</i>	<b>trabalha</b>
<b>-amos</b>	<i>we</i>	<b>trabalhamos</b>
<b>-am</b>	<i>they, you (plural)</i>	<b>trabalham</b>

Here are a few examples:

<b>falo</b>	<i>I speak</i>	<b>gostamos</b>	<i>we like</i>
<b>trabalha</b>	<i>he/she/it works/you work</i>	<b>moram</b>	<i>they, you live</i>

The meanings are sometimes ambiguous, so to make sure you really know who is doing the action, you may need to use the words for *he* (**ele**), *she* (**ela**), or *they* (**eles, elas**).

### More verbs!

Some verbs are not content with changing their endings, but also have a little word accompanying them: **Se**. This word here means *self* or *selves*, so the question **Como eles se chamam?** actually means *what do they call themselves?* These 'self' words are known as 'reflexive pronouns', and they make the verb into a reflexive verb.



The full set you need to know is:

<b>me</b>	<i>myself</i>	<b>nos</b>	<i>ourselves</i>
<b>se</b>	<i>his/her/yourself/itself</i>	<b>se</b>	<i>them/yourselves</i>

You will see that they are placed before the verb. If you were in Portugal or speaking with a Portuguese person, they would usually place them afterwards. If you learnt some Portuguese before starting this course you may discover that in Brazil many of the rules of grammar are much more flexible than in Portugal.

### More possessives: 'his/her'

To say *his/her* (and the plural *their*), in Portuguese, you should say *the (thing) of him/her/them*, as in the dialogue: **Qual é o nome dele?** *What is the name of him? (What is his name?)*

The full forms are:

<b>o/a ... dele</b>	<i>his</i>	<b>o/a ... dela</b>	<i>her</i>
<b>os/as ... dele</b>	<i>his (pl.)</i>	<b>os/as ... dela</b>	<i>her (pl.)</i>
<b>o/a ... deles</b>	<i>their (m)</i>	<b>o/a ... delas</b>	<i>their (f)</i>
<b>os/as ... deles</b>	<i>their</i>	<b>os/as ... delas</b>	<i>their</i>

<b>e.g as chaves deles</b>	<i>their keys</i>	<b>o nome dela</b>	<i>her name</i>
----------------------------	-------------------	--------------------	-----------------

You will also hear *seu/s (sua/s)*, the same form as *your*, but as this can cause confusion, it's better to use the other forms unless the context is completely unambiguous.

Compare **seu nome** *his/her/its/your name* and **o nome dele** *his/its name*.

### Numa *In a*

**Numa** is actually two words squashed together (or contracted) for ease of pronunciation. They are: **em** (*in/on*) + **uma** (*a, fem.*) – **Numa** (*in/on a*), e.g. **numa escola** = *in a school*.

You will also find **num** (em + um), **nuns** (em + uns) and **numas** (em + umas), e.g. **nuns apartamentos** *in some rooms*.

In written Portuguese the two words often appear separated (e.g. **em uma** ...) although in practice people run them together when speaking.

### Ser + professions

To talk about your, or other people's professions, you use **ser** (*to be*) plus the name of the profession, e.g. **sou professora** *I am a teacher*.

Note that there is no equivalent here to the English word *a*.

Here is a check list of some professions you may need to use. If yours is not here, your dictionary or teacher should be able to help you.

**professor/a** *teacher*  
**engenheiro/a** *engineer*  
**o/a dentista** *dentist*  
**o/a motorista** *driver*  
**o/a estudante** *student*

**médico/a** *doctor*  
**advogado/a** *lawyer*  
**receptionista** *receptionist*  
**o/a gerente** *manager*  
**secretário/a** *secretary*

The full set of forms for **ser** is:

**eu sou** *I am*  
**ele/ela é** *s/he, it is*  
**você é** *you are*

**nós somos** *we are*  
**eles/elas são** *they are*  
**vocês são** *you (pl.) are*

### Languages, nationalities

So far you have met **inglesa** (*English woman*) and **português** (*Portuguese*). Words of nationality, used also to describe the place of origin of something, are adjectives, and the name of any language is the masculine singular form. Look at the following

table for more examples. Portuguese does not use capital letters for words of nationality.

	Nationality				Language spoken
	<i>masc. sing.</i>	<i>fem. sing.</i>	<i>masc. pl.</i>	<i>fem. pl.</i>	
<b>Brazilian</b>	<i>brasileiro</i>	<i>brasileira</i>	<i>brasileiros</i>	<i>brasileiras</i>	<i>português</i>
<b>Portuguese</b>	<i>português</i>	<i>portuguesa</i>	<i>portugueses</i>	<i>portuguesas</i>	<i>português</i>
<b>English</b>	<i>inglês</i>	<i>inglesa</i>	<i>ingleses</i>	<i>inglesas</i>	<i>inglês</i>
<b>American</b>	<i>americano</i>	<i>americana</i>	<i>americanos</i>	<i>americanas</i>	<i>inglês</i>
<b>Spanish</b>	<i>espanhol</i>	<i>espanhola</i>	<i>espanhois</i>	<i>espanholas</i>	<i>espanhol</i>
<b>Argentine</b>	<i>argentino</i>	<i>argentina</i>	<i>argentinos</i>	<i>argentinas</i>	<i>espanhol</i>
<b>Chilean</b>	<i>chileno</i>	<i>chilena</i>	<i>chilenos</i>	<i>chilenas</i>	<i>espanhol</i>
<b>French</b>	<i>francês</i>	<i>francesa</i>	<i>franceses</i>	<i>francesas</i>	<i>francês</i>
<b>German</b>	<i>alemão</i>	<i>alemã</i>	<i>alemães</i>	<i>alemãs</i>	<i>alemão</i>
<b>Greek</b>	<i>grego</i>	<i>grega</i>	<i>gregos</i>	<i>gregas</i>	<i>grego</i>

## Dialogue 2

José wants to note down some of Sylvia's details so that they can maintain links in the future.

CD1, TR 3, 01:48

- José** Qual é seu endereço em Manchester Sylvia?
- Sylvia** Oitenta e cinco Manor, m-a-n-o-r Road, Manchester, Inglaterra.
- José** Tem telefone?
- Sylvia** Sim, o número é 0161-236-553218, e o número do fax é 0161-236-553222.
- José** Está bem. E tem telefone aqui no hotel?
- Sylvia** Sim, estou no hotel Felix, o número é 678990, e estou no apartamento 15.

qv

**endereço (o)** *address*  
**oitenta e cinco** *eighty-five*  
**Inglaterra** *England*

**telefone (o)** *telephone*  
**no hotel** *in the hotel*  
**estou** *I am*

## True or false?

Say if these statements are **verdadeiro** or **falso**.

V      F

- a** Sylvia lives at 83 Manor Rd.
  - b** She has no phone.
  - c** She is in the Felix Hotel.
- 

## Grammar

### More numbers

#### **CD1, TR 3, 03:07**

Unfortunately, you cannot escape numbers – they surround us in everyday situations – money, time, dates. Here is another set for you to start learning.

<b>21</b>	vinte e um/uma	<b>50</b>	cinquenta
<b>22</b>	vinte e dois/duas	<b>60</b>	sessenta
<b>23</b>	vinte e três	<b>70</b>	setenta
<b>24</b>	vinte e quatro	<b>80</b>	oitenta
<b>25</b>	vinte e cinco	<b>90</b>	noventa
<b>30</b>	trinta	<b>100</b>	cem (cento)
<b>31</b>	trinta e um/uma	<b>101</b>	cento e um
<b>40</b>	quarenta		

The word **e** (*and*) is used to join the two lots of digits together.

46 – quarenta e seis

89 – oitenta e nove

**Cem** is used for a round 100 and **cento** for 101 and beyond.

## **Estar** *To be*

To say where you are temporarily, you must use **estar**, the verb *to be* that describes anything temporary, including location e.g. **Estou no hotel** *I am in the hotel*.

The full set of forms for this verb are:

<b>eu estou</b>	<i>I am</i>	<b>nós estamos</b>	<i>we are</i>
<b>ele/ela está</b>	<i>he/she/it is</i>	<b>eles/elas estão</b>	<i>they are</i>
<b>você está</b>	<i>you are</i>	<b>vocês estão</b>	<i>you (pl.) are</i>

## **No hotel** *In the hotel*

**No** is another example of a contracted pair of words, in this case **em + o** (*the*). It means *in the* or *on the*. You will also find **na = em + a**, **nos = em + os**, **nas = em + as** (*nas cidades in the towns*).

You will also discover that the word **de** (*of, from*) contracts in the same way: **do/da/dos/das** e.g. **A chave do hotel** *the key of the hotel* (the hotel's key).

## **Countries**

Most countries in Portuguese also fall into either a masculine or feminine group. Here are some examples:

### **Masculine countries**

<b>o Brasil</b>	<i>Brazil</i>
<b>o Canadá</b>	<i>Canada</i>
<b>o México</b>	<i>Mexico</i>
<b>o Japão</b>	<i>Japan</i>
<b>o Peru</b>	<i>Peru</i>
<b>o Reino Unido</b>	<i>the UK</i>
<b>os Estados Unidos</b>	<i>the USA</i>

### **Feminine countries**

<b>a Inglaterra</b>	<i>England</i>
<b>a França</b>	<i>France</i>
<b>a Alemanha</b>	<i>Germany</i>
<b>a Argentina</b>	<i>Argentina</i>
<b>a Itália</b>	<i>Italy</i>
<b>a China</b>	<i>China</i>
<b>a Espanha</b>	<i>Spain</i>

So, to say *I am from England* you should say: **sou da** (**de + a**) **Inglaterra**, using the contracted form of **da**. Not everyone follows this rule, though, so you will also hear 'sou de Inglaterra' etc.

## Insight

When out at a café, Brazilians love to drink their **cafezinho** *little coffee* (strong, dark espresso), or when it's hot the **chope** – *cooled draught national lager*, the most well known being **Antártica**.

One of this company's ads for its lager used to have the slogan **estupidamente gelada** *stupidly chilled* – it certainly makes sense when the temperature rises!

## Insight

When giving someone a telephone number, if there is a six in the number, the Brazilians often say **meia** (*half*), and not **seis**.

## Test yourself

como é...?

*what's ... like?*

como se chama/m ...?

*what is/are he/she/you/they called?*

qual é o (seu) nome?

*what's (your) name?*

tem ... anos

*is ... years old*

qual é seu endereço?

*what's your address?*

o número do telefone/fax é...

*the telephone/fax number is ...*

Londres é barulhento

*London is noisy*

Trabalho num hotel

*I work in a hotel*

Sou medico

*I am a doctor*

Somos americanas

*We are Americans*

## Practice

Complete your part of the dialogue. José is trying to find out more about you.

**José** Você é de Liverpool?

**You** (Say no, I'm from Birmingham.)

**José** Como é a cidade de Birmingham?

(Contd)

- You** *(Say it's big and industrial.)*  
**José** Tem filhos?  
**You** *(Say yes, I have one son.)*  
**José** Qual é o nome dele?  
**You** *(Say he is called David. He is 28 years old and is a French teacher.)*  
**José** Você trabalha?  
**You** *(Say yes, I work for an international company.)*

**2** Match up the telephone numbers in digits and Portuguese.

- |  |                   |
|--|-------------------|
| <b>a</b> quatro dois um cinco três três    | <b>i</b> 368475   |
| <b>b</b> seis seis oito quatro quatro zero | <b>ii</b> 553311  |
| <b>c</b> três meia oito quatro sete cinco  | <b>iii</b> 421533 |
| <b>d</b> cinco cinco três três um um       | <b>iv</b> 904621  |
| <b>e</b> nove zero quatro meia dois um     | <b>v</b> 668440   |

**CD1, TR 3, 03:45**

**3** Listen to someone describing their family, work and town, and tick which pictures apply to the descriptions given.

**1 a**



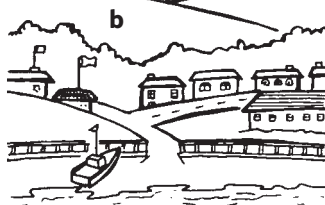
**b**



**2 a**



**b**



3 a



b



4 a



b



4 Fill in the gaps with appropriate words for numbers/nouns/adjectives.

- a Tenho (5) \_\_\_\_ chaves (small) \_\_\_\_.
- b Sra Ferreira é \_\_\_\_ (Brazilian).
- c Sylvia tem três \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ (interesting, children).
- d Sou de Paris; é uma cidade \_\_\_\_ (historic).
- e Marli tem \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ (2, German wines).

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

One of Marli's students has received a letter from a new penfriend. Can you read it and answer the questions on it?



*Brasília, 8 de janeiro*

*Oi Maria,*

*Tudo bem? Eu estou muito bem. Vou te dizer um pouco sobre quem sou. Meu nome é Vânia, tenho vinte e dois anos e sou de Brasília.*

*É uma cidade super-grande e moderna, e muito interessante. Não sou casada. Sou estudante de línguas e também trabalho numa escola secundária; sou secretária.*

*Tchau, Vânia*

**qv** vou te dizer um pouco sobre quem sou *I'm going to tell  
you a bit about who I am*

- 1** How old is Vânia?
- 2** What is Brasília like?
- 3** Is she married?
- 4** What does she do?
- 5** Now write a short letter like this about yourself.

(You will find an example in the Key to the exercises.)

# 3

## Onde é sua cidade?

### Where is your town?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to describe where your home town is*
- *How to describe your belongings and recover lost property*
- *How to describe what things are made of*
- *About colours*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia goes to the Ferreiras' house to arrange her stay there. She chats to the daily help (a *faxineira*), Dona Rita.

- Sylvia** Bom dia. Sou Sylvia Peters, amiga da senhora Ferreira.
- D. Rita** Bom dia, senhora. Como está?
- Sylvia** Bem, obrigada, e a senhora?
- D. Rita** Eu estou bem, graças a Deus.
- Sylvia** Marli está?
- D. Rita** Ela já vem da escola. A senhora não é daqui, é?
- Sylvia** Não, sou inglesa. Sou de Manchester.
- D. Rita** E como é a sua cidade? É uma cidade grande como aqui? Onde é? Perto de Londres?
- Sylvia** Bom, Manchester é uma cidade interessante e bastante grande, mas não como São Paulo.

(Contd)

CD1, TR 4, 00:10

- D. Rita** E sua família mora lá com você?
- Sylvia** Mora, sim, mas também tenho família no centro da Inglaterra, em Birmingham, e também numa cidade pequena ao sul do país, perto de Londres. Manchester não é perto de Londres, mas ao noroeste do país.
- D. Rita** Aqui está a senhora Ferreira. Vão pegar suas malas, não é?
- Sylvia** Sim, vamos para o hotel agora e voltamos para o jantar.

QUICK VOCAB

**amiga (a)** *friend*  
**estou bem** *I'm well*  
**graças a Deus** *thank goodness*  
**Marli está?** *is Marli at home?*  
**ela já vem** *she's on her way*  
**daqui** *from here*  
**como aqui** *like here*  
**bastante grande** *quite big*  
**não como ...** *not like ...*  
**mora** *live*  
**lá** *there*  
**onde é** *where is?*

**com** *with*  
**no centro de** *in the centre of*  
**ao sul de** *to the south of*  
**país (o)** *country*  
**perto de** *near to*  
**ao noroeste de** *in the northwest of*  
**pegar** *to get/fetch*  
**malas (as)** *suitcases*  
**vamos** *we're going*  
**agora** *now*  
**voltamos** *we'll return*  
**jantar (o)** *dinner*

**True or false?**

Tick **verdadeiro** or **falso** for the following statements based on the dialogue.

V F

- a** Marli está em casa (at home).
- b** Sylvia tem família em Manchester.
- c** Londres é longe de Manchester.
- d** Marli e Sylvia vão para o hotel.
- e** Elas vão jantar no hotel.

---

## Grammar

### X's friend

When talking about possession in the 3rd person (he/she/it/they), remember you learnt to say *the (thing) of him/her*, etc. in Unit 2. The same applies if you want to use alternatives to him/her, such as *the teacher's key*, *the student's room*, etc. You must turn the sentence around in Portuguese and say:

*the key of the teacher* – **a chave do professor (da professora)**  
*the room of the students* – **o apartamento dos estudantes**

In the dialogue you met 'amiga da senhora Ferreira' – Mrs Ferreira's friend.

---

### Insight

'Mr' and 'Mrs'

The expressions for *Mr* and *Mrs* are **(o) senhor (sr)** and **(a) senhora (sra)**. These combine with words such as **de** to form **do sr/da sra**, e.g. **a casa do senhor Villas Boas** *Mr Villas Boas' house*.

---

### Locations

If you are describing where your home town or place of work is, the following may be useful:

**no/\*ao norte (de)** *in/to the north (of)*  
**no/ao sul** *in the south*  
**ao/no centro (de)** *in the centre (of)*  
**no interior** *inland*  
**perto de** *near*

**no/ao leste** *in the east*  
**no/ao oeste** *in the west*  
**na costa** *on the coast*  
**no litoral** *on the coast*  
**longe de** *far (from)*

\***ao** = **a** (*to/at*) + **o** (*the*). Other contractions involving the word **a** (which is known as a preposition – a locating word) are:

**a + a = à**      **vamos à cidade** *we're going to the town/city*

**a + os = aos** **vamos aos hotéis** *we're going to the hotels*

**a + as = às**      **vamos às lojas** *we're going to the shops*

Try not to be thrown off balance by the fact that the word **a** in Portuguese also means *the* in the feminine form.

**Liverpool é ao norte da  
Inglaterra.**

*Liverpool is in the north of  
England.*

**Brasília é no centro do Brasil.**

*Brasília is in the centre of Brazil.*

**Campinas é no interior de São  
Paulo.**

*Campinas is in the interior of São  
Paulo (State).*

**Ir** *To go*

You met parts of this important irregular verb in the dialogue: **vão** – *you* (pl.) *are going*, and **vamos** – *we're going* (also meaning *let's ...*).

In full, the verb is:

**vou**      *I'm going/I go*

**vamos**      *we're going/go*

**vai**      *s/he's going/s/he goes*

**vão**      *they're going/they go*

*you're going/you go*

*you're going/you go (pl.)*

*it's going/it goes*

You can use it to say what you do on a regular basis (**vou à escola** – *I go to school*), or what you are going to do (**vamos ao centro** – *we're going to the town centre*). **Vamos** also means 'let's go'.

---

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia realizes she left her bag in the taxi on the way to the Ferreiras'. Marli takes her to the taxi lost property office (**a seção de perdidos e achados**) where she talks to an employee (**empregado**).

<b>Empregado</b>	Bom, vamos ver. Uma bolsa, sim?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Isso. É bem pequena.
<b>Empregado</b>	E de que é? De couro, de plástico, de quê?
<b>Sylvia</b>	De couro.
<b>Empregado</b>	E de que cor é?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Preta e roxa.
<b>Empregado</b>	E tem alguma coisa dentro?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim, tem a chave do hotel, uma carteira com dinheiro, minha agenda, e meus óculos de sol amarelos.
<b>Empregado</b>	É esta? ( <i>shows her a bag</i> )
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim, é. Obrigada. É muito gentil.
<b>Empregado</b>	De nada. Faça o favor de assinar aqui. Bom dia.

**bolsa (a)** *bag*

**carteira (a)** *purse/wallet*

**de que é** *what's it (made) of?*

**dinheiro (o)** *money*

**agenda (a)** *diary*

**é bem pequena** *it's really small*

**(de) couro** *leather*

**óculos de sol (os)** *sunglasses*

**(de) plástico** *plastic*

**de que cor é?** *what colour is it?*

**amarelos** *yellow*

**preto** *black*

**gentil** *kind*

**roxo** *purple*

**faça o favor de assinar** *please sign*

**alguma coisa** *something*

**dentro** *inside*

## Exercise

Answer **sim** *yes* or **não** *no* to these statements.

- a** A bolsa de Sylvia é de couro. \_\_\_\_\_
- b** É preta. \_\_\_\_\_
- c** Tem o passaporte dentro. \_\_\_\_\_

---

## Grammar

### De que é (feito)? *What's it (made) of?*

To describe what something is made from, Portuguese often uses the structure: a (thing) of (material). Look at these examples:

De: plástico	<i>plastic</i>	papel	<i>paper</i>
couro	<i>leather</i>	lã	<i>wool</i>
vidro	<i>glass</i>	algodão	<i>cotton</i>
metal	<i>metal</i>	pedra	<i>stone</i>
madeira	<i>wood</i>	tijolo	<i>brick/tile</i>

e.g. **uma bolsa de plástico** *a plastic bag*, **uma toalha de algodão** *a cotton towel*. You can of course find examples such as **uma bolsa plástica** and **uma chave metálica**, where adjectives are used rather than the name of the material itself.

### Colours

You will also need to know as **cores** *colours* to describe personal possessions, or even features of people (eyes, etc.).

Remember that as **cores** *colours* are adjectives. They must change their endings where appropriate to match the noun(s) they are describing. They also go after the noun, e.g.

QUICK VOCAB

**preto** *black*  
**branco** *white*  
**roxo** *purple*  
**azul**  
(pl. = **azuis**) *blue*  
**amarelo** *yellow*  
**escuro** *dark*

**verde** *green*  
**marrom**  
(pl. = **marrons**) *brown*  
**vermelho** *red*  
(cor de) **laranja** *orange*  
(cor de) **rosa** *pink*  
**claro** *light*

<b>uma chave branca</b>	<i>a white key</i>
<b>dois passaportes azuis</b>	<i>two blue passports</i>
<b>óculos marrons escuros</b>	<i>dark brown glasses</i>
<b>um carro laranja</b>	<i>an orange car</i>

## Insight

### 'Please'

One of the polite ways of asking people to do things is by using the structure of **faça o favor de + verb**. This is literally *do the favour of ... ing*. You can use it with any verb. To ask more than one person to do something, change **faça** to **façam**. For example, **Façam o favor de trabalhar** *Please work*.

## Ser/Estar – an overview

You learnt the formation for these two verbs in the last unit. Let's look more closely at when you should use each one.

### ser

*Professions*

*Nationality*

*Permanent location*

*Permanent characteristics*

*Place of origin*

**Sou professora**

**É inglesa?**

**É no centro**

**É grande/preto**

**Sou de ...**

### estar

*Temporary location*

*Temporary condition*

*Position*

**Aqui está**

**Como está?**

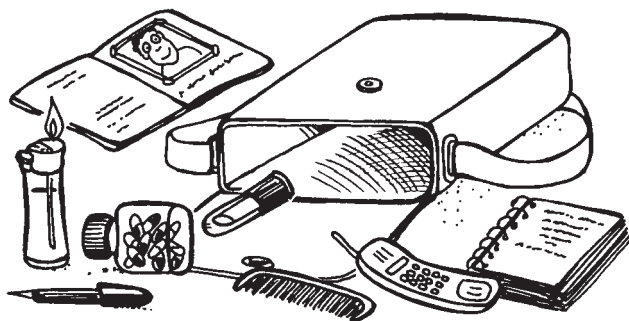
**Está dentro**

## Bags and briefcases

Here are some suggestions for vocabulary you may need when describing the contents of your bag.



o passaporte *passport*  
 o celular (o telemóvel) *mobile phone*  
 uma caneta *pen*  
 um lenço *handkerchief*  
 os comprimidos *tablets*  
 o livro de endereços *address book*  
 os bilhetes de ... *tickets for ...*  
 um pente *comb*  
 o batom *lipstick*  
 o isqueiro *cigarette lighter*  
 as chaves *keys*



## Test yourself

como é sua cidade?  
 onde é (sua cidade?)  
 ... é uma cidade ...  
 é grande/interessante/pequena  
 ao norte/sul/leste/oeste  
 faça/m o favor de ...  
 de que é feito?  
 é de couro/vidro/lã  
 de que cor é?  
 é preto/azul/vermelho

what's your town like?  
 where is it (your town)?  
 ... is a ... town  
 it's big/interesting/small  
 to/in the north/south/east/west  
 please ...  
 what's it made of?  
 it's made of leather/glass/wool  
 what colour is it?  
 it's black/blue/red

## Practice

1 Decide which verb *to be* (**ser/estar**) you should use in each example, and write the correct form of it.

- a José \_\_\_\_\_ do Brasil.
- b As cidades \_\_\_\_\_ grandes.
- c Minha chave \_\_\_\_\_ dentro da bolsa.
- d João tem um filho; ele \_\_\_\_\_ médico.
- e \_\_\_\_\_ Ângela, \_\_\_\_\_ americana.

2 Fill in your part of the dialogue, about where you're from.

**Sônia** Você é de Nova Iorque, não é?

**You** (Say no, I'm from Brighton.)

**Sônia** Onde é Brighton?

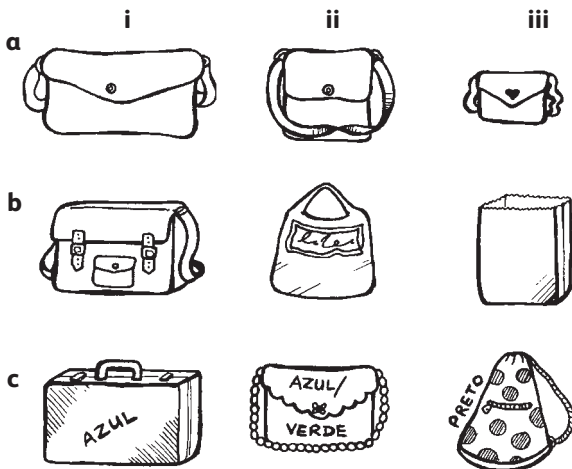
**You** (Say it's a small town in the south of England.)

**Sônia** É perto de Londres?

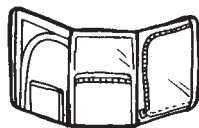
**You** (Say yes, it's quite near.)

CD1, TR 4, 03:05

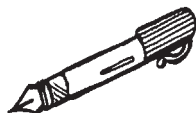
3 Listen to someone describing their bag and its contents. Tick the relevant pictures below, according to what you hear.



d



e



CD1, TR 4, 03:36

- 4 Look at the map below and listen to the description of where certain towns are located. See if you can correctly mark where the towns should be.



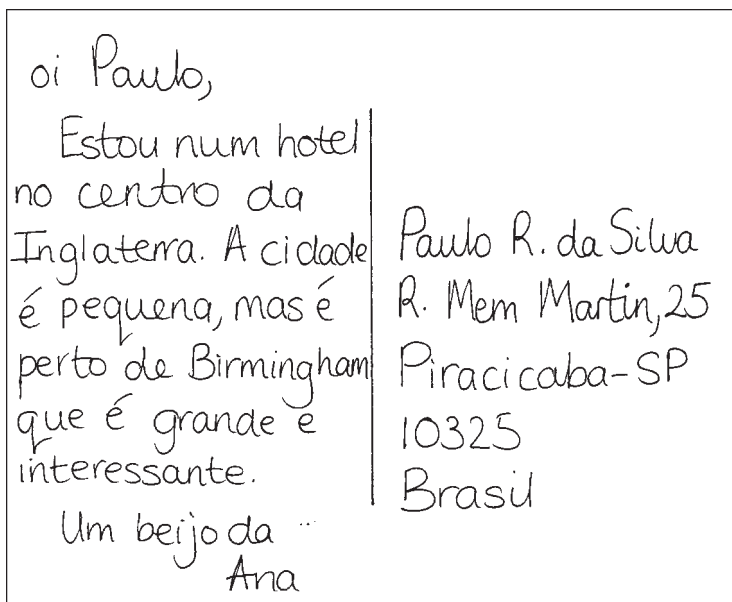
Choose from:

Santos	Uberaba
Piracicaba	
Campinas	Catanduva

- 1 =  
2 =  
3 =  
4 =  
5 =

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the following postcard, and say if the statements below are verdadeiro or falso.



V F

- 1 Ana is staying with relatives.
- 2 She is in the Northwest of England.
- 3 The town is not far from Birmingham.
- 4 She thinks Birmingham is boring.

# 4

## Há uma farmácia por aqui?

Is there a chemist's around here?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to ask for and understand basic directions*
- *How to talk about the weather*
- *How to understand time*
- *How to say there is/there are*

### Dialogue 1

Sylvia pops into the city centre (o centro). First of all she needs a chemist.

CD1, TR 5, 00:10

<b>Sylvia</b>	Desculpe. Há uma farmácia por aqui?
<b>Transeunte</b>	(passer-by) Aqui, nesta rua não há, mas há uma na Rua Cabral.
<b>Sylvia</b>	E onde é esta rua?
<b>Transeunte</b>	Bem, você vai por aqui em frente, vira à esquerda naquela esquina, depois você segue em frente mais um pouco, toma a segunda à direita, e a farmácia é aí.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Fica muito longe?
<b>Transeunte</b>	Não, é só dez minutos.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Obrigada.

**desculpe** *excuse me*

**há** *there is/are; is/are there?*

**farmácia (a)** *chemist's*

**por aqui** *round here*

**nesta rua não há** *there isn't one in this street*

**mas** *but*

**você: vai/vira/segue/toma** *you: go/turn/follow/take*

**em frente** *in front/ahead*

**à esquerda/direita** *on the left/right*

**mais um pouco** *a little more*

**a segunda** *the second*

**é aí** *it's there*

**fica muito longe?** *is it a long way off?*

**é só dez minutos** *it's only ten minutes*

**naquela esquina** *on that street corner*

## Exercise 1

Can you answer the following questions based on the dialogue?

Yes      No

- a** Is there a chemist's where Sylvia is?
- b** Does Sylvia have to turn left?
- c** Is the chemist's a long way off?

## Grammar

### Is there ...?

To ask if there is a particular shop near where you are, you say **há** (*is/are there*) [*a shop*] **por aqui?** You can also talk about such locations as: **aqui perto/perto daqui** – *near (to) here*, **nesta rua/cidade** – *in this street/town*. If you are lucky, the answer will be: **sim, há**. In the dialogue the answer was negative (**não há**), but at least the passer-by helpfully explained where the nearest chemist's was.

You can also use **tem...?** as an alternative to **há**. **Tem um banco perto daqui?** *Is there a bank near here?*

To be more specific in your request for information, use: **onde é?** – *where is?* or **onde há/tem** – *where is there (a)?* Understanding the directions is another matter!

## Directions

To begin with you need to know your basic directions:

**à esquerda <**  
(to/on the) left

**em frente ^**  
straight on

**à direita >**  
(to/on the) right

Then, some basic instructions:

<b>você vai</b>	<i>you go</i>
<b>vira</b>	<i>turn</i>
<b>segue</b>	<i>carry on</i>
<b>toma</b>	<i>take</i>

And you will finally discover what you're looking for:

**e ... é aí/fica aí/é por aí** – *and ... is over there*

You may want to check: **fica longe/perto?** – *is it a long way/near?* or **é longe daqui?** – *is it a long way from here?* If you're lucky the answer will be: **é perto!**

You may well make use of expressions such as:

**Pode repetir por favor?** *Can you repeat that please?*

**Não compreendo muito bem.** *I don't understand very well.*

**Fale mais devagar.** *Speak more slowly.*

**Nesta, naquela** *In this, in that*

These are two more examples of contracted words. **Nesta** comes from **em + esta** (*this*) (you met the other forms of **esta** in Unit 1).

**Naquela** comes from **em + aquela** (*that*). The full forms of *that/those* are:

aquele (m.)	aquela (f.)	aqueles (m. pl.)	aquelas (f. pl.)
aquele senhor naquela rua	that man in that street	aqueles ruas naqueles livros	those streets in those books

### First to fifth

#### 🔊 CD1, TR 5, 01:05

When requesting directions, you also need to know some ordinal numbers (i.e. the numbers used for putting things in numerical order), so that you can turn down the appropriate street. Here are a few to get you going. You will need more of them if you are visiting people who live on the 20th floors of high-rise blocks!

1st	<b>primeiro</b>	2nd	<b>segundo</b>	3rd	<b>terceiro</b>
4th	<b>quarto</b>	5th	<b>quinto</b>		

These are adjectives and as such will change their endings to agree with the noun they are describing, e.g. *the second key* = **a segunda chave**, *the 4th street* = **a quarta rua**. They are placed before the noun, unlike most other adjectives.

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia now needs to find a bank.

<b>Sylvia</b>	Desculpe. Sabe se há um banco perto daqui?
<b>Transeunte</b>	Sim, há um banco no fim da rua, à direita.
<b>Sylvia</b>	E sabe se está aberto agora?
<b>Transeunte</b>	Que horas são?
<b>Sylvia</b>	São onze e meia.
<b>Transeunte</b>	Então, sim, está aberto. Aqui os bancos abrem das oito e meia da manhã até às três horas da tarde.

🔊 CD1, TR 5, 01:20



**sabe se** *do you know if/whether*  
**no fim da rua** *at the end of the street*  
**está aberto** *is open*  
**que horas são?** *what time is it?*  
**são onze e meia** *it's 11.30*  
**então** *well then*  
**os bancos abrem** *the banks open*  
**das 8 e meia da manhã** *from 8.30 in the morning*  
**até às 3 horas da tarde** *until 3 pm*

### True or false?

Say whether the following are **verdadeiro** (V) or **falso** (F).

- a** Há um banco perto.
- b** O banco não está aberto.
- c** Os bancos abrem até às 4 horas da tarde.

## Grammar

### Spend, spend, spend!!!

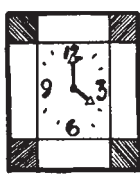
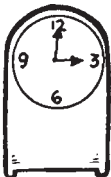
Here is a check-list of some of the shops and establishments you may need to talk about.

<b>as lojas</b> <i>shops</i>	<b>o correio</b> <i>post office</i>
<b>o mercado</b> <i>market</i>	<b>a farmácia</b> <i>chemist's</i>
<b>o supermercado</b> <i>supermarket</i>	<b>o turismo</b> <i>tourist</i>
<b>o hotel</b> <i>hotel</i>	<i>information</i>
<b>o restaurante</b> <i>restaurant</i>	<b>a loja de roupas</b>
<b>o café</b> <i>café</i>	<i>clothes shop</i>
<b>o banco</b> <i>bank</i>	<b>o açougue</b> <i>butcher's</i>
<b>a padaria</b> <i>baker's</i>	<b>a peixaria</b> <i>fishmonger's</i>
<b>a sapataria</b> <i>shoe shop</i>	<b>a drogaria</b> <i>drugstore</i>
<b>a merceria</b> <i>grocer's</i>	<b>a livraria</b> <i>book store</i>

You will find more on shops in Unit 7.

## Time

To ask the time you say *Que horas são?* – literally *what hours are they?* Answers will be:



São duas horas. São três horas. São quatro horas. São cinco horas.



São seis horas. São sete horas. São oito horas. São nove horas.



São dez horas. São onze horas. São doze horas.

É meio-dia/meia-noite/uma hora – *It's midday/midnight/one o'clock*

Time past the hour is expressed as:

X (horas) e Y (minutos), e.g. São cinco e vinte *It's twenty past five.* Quarter and half past are: X e um quarto/X e meia or X e quinze/X e trinta.

Time to the hour is expressed as minutes to (para) the next hour, e.g. São dez para as oito = *it's ten to eight.*

Opening and closing times: aberto/a = *open* and fechado/a = *closed.*

People will express shop times as follows: ... **abre/fecha** (está **aberto/fechado**) das ... (horas) **até às ... horas**. *It opens/closes (it's open/closed) from .... (o'clock) until .... o'clock.* e.g. **O turismo abre das nove e um quarto até às dez para as cinco** = *The tourist office opens from 9.15 till 4.50.*

This can be qualified with the part of the day in question: **da manhã/da tarde/da noite** – *in the morning/in the afternoon/at night*, e.g. **até às três horas da tarde** = *until three in the afternoon.*

### Dialogue 3

Sylvia stops at the **quiosque** in the square to buy a newspaper (**um jornal**).

<b>Sylvia</b>	Boa tarde. Uma 'Folha de São Paulo' por favor.
<b>Vendedora</b> (vendedor)	São 2 reais.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Que calor, não é?
<b>Vendedora</b>	Pois é, hoje está muito quente. A senhora não é daqui, é?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Não, sou inglesa.
<b>Vendedora</b>	Ah, na Inglaterra sempre chove, não é?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Chove muito, mas no verão também faz calor. Mas aqui na cidade não venta, e está muito abafado.
<b>Vendedora</b>	É sempre assim – ainda pior por causa da poluição aqui. Eu não aguento estes dias.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Nem eu. Bom, tenho de ir. Tchau.

**Folha de São Paulo** São Paulo daily paper  
**por favor** please  
**que calor** isn't it hot (lit. what heat)  
**são ... reais** that's ... reais  
**hoje** today  
**quente** hot  
**sempre** always

**chove** *it rains*  
**no verão** *in the summer*  
**faz calor** *it's hot*  
**abafado** *stifling/close*  
**é sempre assim** *it's always like this*  
**ainda pior** *even worse*  
**por causa de** *because of*  
**poluição (a)** *pollution*  
**não aguento** *I can't stand*  
**nem eu** *me neither*  
**tenho de ir** *I have to go*

## Exercise 2

See if you have understood the dialogue. Choose the correct answers from the boxes.

- How much is the paper? **a** 2 reais **b** 3 reais
- The vendor thinks in England it's always **a** raining **b** windy
- One of the contributing factors to the heavy atmosphere is  
**a** pollution **b** clouds

## Grammar

### The weather

There are various ways to describe **o tempo** *the weather*:

Verb		Expressions			
<b>fazer</b>	<i>to do/make</i>	<b>faz calor</b>	<i>it's hot</i>	<b>faz frio</b>	<i>it's cold</i>
<b>estar</b>	<i>to be</i>	<b>está quente</b>	<i>it's hot</i>	<b>está frio</b>	<i>it's cold</i>
		<b>está abafado</b>	<i>it's close</i>		
<b>chover</b>	<i>to rain</i>			<b>chove</b>	<i>it rains</i>
<b>nevar</b>	<i>to snow</i>			<b>neva</b>	<i>it snows</i>

Ser is only used with weather expressions if you are describing a permanent state, such as climate: **É sempre frio no inverno no Canadá** – *It's always cold in winter in Canada.*

### Insight

Most shops in Brazil open from 8.30 to 6.30. On Saturdays they open until lunchtime, and it is rare to find anything except cafés or large shopping centres open on Sundays.

### Insight

The summer months can become quite intolerable heat-wise, especially if you are away from the coast. Remember the seasons in Brazil are the opposite to the northern hemisphere. The hottest time is January–March.

### Insight

Brazilian currency is the **real** (pl. **reais**). Inflation in Brazil is notorious for its eccentricity, running over 100% and more, although in recent years it has shown signs of steadying.

### Insight

Some Brazilian publications are available outside the country and make good reading practice. You could try getting hold of **Folha de São Paulo**, or **Veja** (like *Time*).

---

## Test yourself

há/tem um/a ... por aqui?  
à esquerda/direita  
fica (muito) longe/perto?  
a segunda rua ...  
está aberto/fechado?  
são ... horas

*is there a ... round here?  
on the left/right  
is it (very) far/near?  
the second street ...  
is it open/closed?  
it's ... o'clock*

abrem das ... até às ...  
da manhã/tarde/noite  
por favor  
está quente/frio

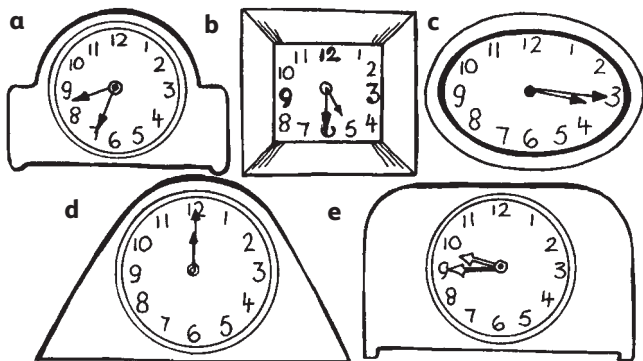
they open from ... to ...  
in the morning/afternoon/evening  
please  
it's hot/cold

## Practice

### 1 Can you do the following?

- a ask if there is a butcher's near here
- b ask where there is a post office
- c ask what time it is
- d say it's 2.30 pm
- e say in Germany it rains a little

### 2 Look at the clocks below and match them to the times given.



i são cinco e meia ii é meio-dia/meia noite iii são vinte e cinco  
para as nove iv são três e um quarto v é um quarto para as dez

### 3 Look at the map overleaf, then read the directions. In each case say where you would end up if you correctly followed the instructions.

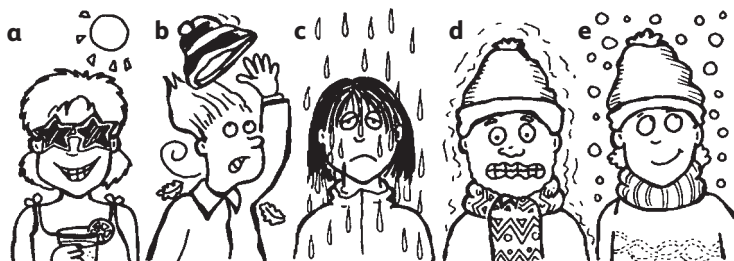
Instructions: starting outside your hotel (\*on map).

- a Vira à esquerda, toma a segunda rua à direita, e vai em frente. \_\_\_\_\_ fica na esquina.

- b Vai em frente, e \_\_\_\_\_ é ali à direita. É muito perto.
- c Vira à esquerda, segue em frente um pouco, depois toma a primeira à esquerda, e \_\_\_\_\_ é ali em frente.
- d Vai em frente, e segue a rua um pouco. Toma a segunda à esquerda, depois vira à esquerda, e toma a primeira à direita. \_\_\_\_\_ é aí em frente.

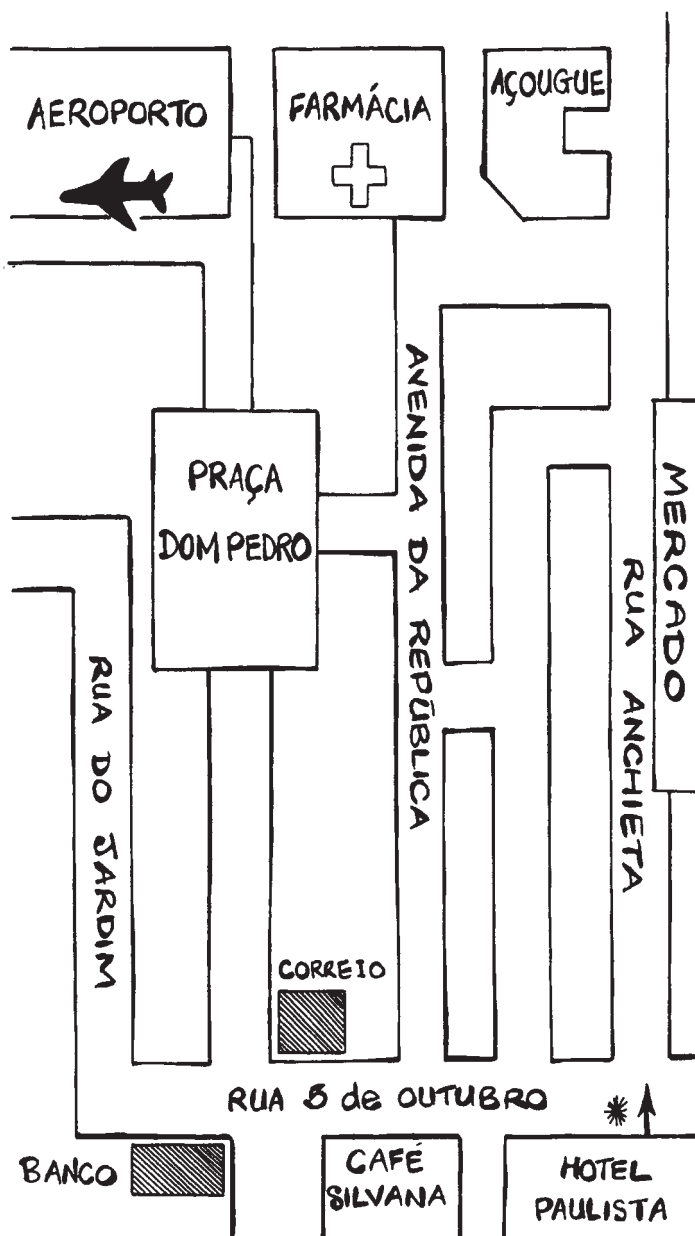
CD1, TR 5, 02:52

- 4 Listen to someone describing the weather today in various countries (England, Brazil, France, Mexico, Japan) and link up the weather pictures with the appropriate country.



- 5 Fill in your part of this dialogue. You are trying to find out about the local market.

<b>You</b>	<i>(Say excuse me. Do you know if there is a market near here?)</i>
<b>Transeunte</b>	Sim, há um no fim da rua.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Say do you know if it is open now.)</i>
<b>Transeunte</b>	Que horas são?
<b>You</b>	<i>(Say it's 10.15.)</i>
<b>Transeunte</b>	Então, sim, está aberto.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Ask is it far?)</i>
<b>Transeunte</b>	Não, é só cinco minutos.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Say thanks and goodbye.)</i>





**6** Fill in the gaps below with words from the box.

- a** Onde \_\_\_\_\_ o mercado?
- b** É \_\_\_\_\_ em frente.
- c** \_\_\_\_\_ são meus filhos.
- d** Toma a \_\_\_\_\_ rua à esquerda.
- e** São dez \_\_\_\_\_ as oito.

.....  
: aqueles      terceira      fica      para      ali :  
.....

---

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Read this message that has been left for Sylvia, and answer the questions below.

***Sylvia***

***Pode fazer um favor para mim, e ir ao correio com as cartas?***

***Vai daqui à esquerda, vira à direita na rua Gomes Sá, e toma a segunda à esquerda que é a rua Nascimento. O correio fica ali em frente. Abre das nove e quinze até às quatro da tarde.***

***Não é muito longe!***

***Obrigada***

***Marli.***

- 1** Where does Marli want Sylvia to go?
- 2** Where should she turn right?
- 3** Which street on the left should she take?
- 4** What time does the place close?
- 5** Is it very far?

# 5

## A que horas começa?

### What time do you start?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to discuss your work**
- **How to discuss how you travel to work**
- **How to talk about daily routines**

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia and the Ferreiras have gone on a trip to Santos, the most important port on the southern Brazilian coast.

- Sylvia** Meu Deus! É tão grande – e movimentado. Quantas pessoas trabalham aqui?
- José** Não sei exatamente, mas deve ser um número enorme. É o porto mais importante do Brasil.
- Marli** É mais importante do que Liverpool. Você vê todos os barcos ali? Vêm de toda parte do mundo.
- Sylvia** Incrível. Marli, me diga uma coisa – a escola onde você trabalha – tem quantos alunos?
- Marli** Tem mais ou menos cento e vinte alunos – dos catorze aos vinte e cinco anos.
- Sylvia** Então, é uma escola bastante grande. Você come lá durante o dia?

(Contd)

CD1, TR 6, 00:10

- Marli** Não, a escola não tem refeitório mas eu almoço num café bem perto.
- Sylvia** A que horas começa?
- Marli** Começo às oito e um quarto, tenho uma hora e meia para o almoço, e saio às seis da tarde. Às vezes tenho uma turma à noite.
- Sylvia** Tanto trabalho!
- Marli** É mesmo!

**meu Deus!** *my God/goodness me*

**tão** *so*

**quantas pessoas** *how many people*

**não sei exatamente** *I don't know exactly*

**deve ser** *it must be*

**enorme** *enormous*

**porto (o)** *port*

**o mais importante do Brasil** *the most important in Brazil*

**mais importante do que Liverpool** *more important than Liverpool*

**você vê?** *can you see?*

**todos** *all*

**barcos (os)** *boats*

**vêm** *come*

**toda parte** *every part*

**mundo (o)** *world*

**incrível** *incredible*

**diga uma coisa** *tell me something*

**alunos (os)** *pupils*

**mais ou menos** *more or less*

**come** *you eat*

**durante** *during*

**refeitório (o)** *canteen*

**almoço/almoço (o)** *I lunch/lunch*

**bem perto** *really near*

**a que horas** *at what time*

**começa/começo** *you/I begin*

**saio** *I leave/go out*

**às vezes** *sometimes*

**turma (a)** *class/group*  
**tanto trabalho** *so much work*  
**é mesmo** *you're right/it really is/sure thing*

## Exercise 1

Choose the correct words to fill in the gaps.

- a** Santos é um porto muito \_\_\_\_ grande/pequeno.
- b** Marli come o almoço \_\_\_\_ num restaurante/num café.
- c** Marli trabalha \_\_\_\_ muito/pouco.

## Grammar

### **O mais importante** *The most important*

When making comparisons between things, places or people, Portuguese uses **mais** more or **menos** less. The structure is: **X é mais (menos) ADJECTIVE do que Y**. For example:

**Santos é mais importante do que Liverpool.**

Often in spoken Portuguese, the **do que** becomes just **que**. The superlative (i.e. the highest degree) of these comparisons is expressed as: **X é o/a (\_\_\_\_) mais ADJECTIVE**. For example:

**Santos é o (porto) mais importante.** *Santos is the most important (port).*

Some adjectives have slightly irregular forms of comparison. Look at the table below.

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<b>alto</b> <i>tall</i>	<b>mais alto</b> <i>taller</i>	<b>o mais alto</b> <i>the tallest</i>
<b>grande</b> <i>big</i>	<b>maior</b> <i>bigger</i>	<b>o maior</b> <i>the biggest</i>

(Contd)

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<b>pequeno</b> <i>small</i>	<b>menor</b> <i>smaller</i>	<b>o menor</b> <i>the smallest</i>
<b>bom</b> <i>good</i>	<b>melhor</b> <i>better</i>	<b>o melhor</b> <i>the best</i>
<b>mau</b> <i>bad</i>	<b>pior</b> <i>worse</i>	<b>o pior</b> <i>the worst</i>

Study these examples:

<b>José é mais alto do que Marli.</b>	<i>José is taller than Marli.</i>
<b>O tempo hoje está melhor.</b>	<i>The weather today is better.</i>
<b>Ela é a pior* aluna.</b>	<i>She is the worst pupil.</i>

Pior and melhor are typically placed before the noun.

### More verbs

In Unit 2 you learnt how to use all the parts of the -ar verb **trabalhar**. To talk about daily routines you need to know how to form verbs from the other two main groups.

	<b>-er</b> <b>comer</b> <i>to eat</i>	<b>-ir</b> <b>partir</b> <i>to leave</i>
eu	como	parto
ele/ela	come	parte
você	come	parte
nós	comemos	partimos
eles/elas	comem	partem
vocês	comem	partem

You will see that the endings for these two groups are very similar.

**Ver, vir** *To see, to come*

Irregular verbs are always awkward, and you must concentrate hard in order to learn them adequately. Two verbs most commonly

mixed up are **ver** and **vir**. Look at the two of them in the present tense.

<i>ver to see</i>	<i>vir to come</i>
<b>vejo</b>	<b>venho</b>
<b>vê</b>	<b>vem</b>
<b>vemos</b>	<b>vimos</b>
<b>veem</b>	<b>vêm</b>

**Todo, todas** *All, every*

**Todo** is an adjective meaning *all/every*, and has four parts agreeing with what it is describing.

todo	toda	todos	todas
------	------	-------	-------

You will also come across **tudo**. This is a neuter word (neither m nor f) meaning *everything/all that*, which is non-specific. It never changes form.

<b>todo (o) dia/todos os dias</b>	<i>every day</i>
<b>todas as pessoas</b>	<i>all the people/everyone</i>
<b>tudo é bom</b>	<i>everything is good</i>

## The numbers game 100–1000

Here are some more numbers for you to learn.

<b>101</b>	cento e um, uma	<b>150</b>	cento e cinquenta
<b>102</b>	cento e dois, duas	<b>160</b>	cento e sessenta
<b>105</b>	cento e cinco	<b>170</b>	cento e setenta
<b>110</b>	cento e dez	<b>180</b>	cento e oitenta
<b>120</b>	cento e vinte	<b>190</b>	cento e noventa
<b>130</b>	cento e trinta	<b>199</b>	cento e noventa e nove
<b>140</b>	cento e quarenta		

These are on the recording.

» **CD1, TR 6, 01:46**

<b>100</b>	cem	<b>600</b>	seiscentos/as
<b>200</b>	duzentos/as	<b>700</b>	setecentos/as
<b>300</b>	trezentos/as	<b>800</b>	oitocentos/as
<b>400</b>	quatrocentos/as	<b>900</b>	novecentos/as
<b>500</b>	quinhentos/as	<b>1.000</b>	mil

Use the feminine form of these numbers if you are discussing feminine items, e.g. **trezentas milhas** (300 miles). Hundreds, tens and units are each divided by *e*. After thousands there is no *e*, except if the thousand is followed by 1–100, or when followed by 200–999 if the last two numbers are zeros.

1056 – mil e  
cinquenta e seis

2300 – dois mil e  
trezentos

4897 – quatro mil,  
oitocentos e noventa  
e sete

### Insight

Take your time learning the numbers, but try to take every opportunity to practise them in your everyday routines: shopping, lottery, car registrations. Train your mind to see the numeral and instantly put it into Portuguese. It happens in time.

### Time

Saying at what time things happen is not much different from what you learnt in the previous unit.

às ... (horas)

às ... e ...

às ... para ...

à uma hora

ao meio dia/à meia-noite

at ... (o' clock)

at ... (minutes past)

at ... to ...

at one o' clock

at midday/midnight

Look at these examples:

<b>às cinco horas</b>	<i>at five o' clock</i>
<b>às dez e vinte</b>	<i>at 10.20</i>
<b>às quinze para as oito</b>	<i>at 7.45</i>

---

## Dialogue 2

José asks Sylvia about her daily routine.

<b>José</b>	Sylvia, você mora mesmo em Manchester?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Bem, moro a cinco quilômetros de Manchester, numa pequena aldeia, mas trabalho em Manchester.
<b>José</b>	Como é que você vai ao trabalho? Vai de carro?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Não, de manhã e à tarde o trânsito é impossível, por isso vou de bicicleta no verão. Saio de casa às oito e chego ao trabalho às oito e meia.
<b>José</b>	E no inverno – também vai de bicicleta no frio?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Não, não tenho coragem – em Manchester chove muito no inverno. Ou vou de ônibus, ou pego uma carona com uma amiga.
<b>José</b>	A que horas sai do escritório à tarde?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Em geral saio de lá por volta das cinco e meia, mas às vezes fico trabalhando até às seis, seis e um pouco.

**mesmo em Manchester** *in Manchester itself/right in Manchester*  
**a 5 quilômetros de** *5 km from*  
**aldeia (a)** *village*  
**como vai a ...?** *how do you get to ...?*  
**de carro/bicicleta/ônibus** *by car/bike/bus*  
**trânsito (o)** *traffic*  
**impossível** *impossible*  
**por isso** *for that reason/so*  
**verão (o)** *summer*  
**chego** *I arrive*



**inverno (o)** *winter*  
**coragem (a)** *courage*  
**ou ... ou ...** *either ... or ...*  
**pego uma carona** *I get a lift*  
**amiga (a)** *friend*  
**escritório (o)** *office*  
**em geral** *generally*  
**por volta de** *around*  
**às vezes** *sometimes*  
**fico trabalhando** *I stay working*

## Exercise 2

Say if these statements are **verdadeiro** or **falso**.

V      F

- a** Sylvia lives in Manchester itself.
  - b** In summer she cycles to work.
  - c** Sometimes she works until 9 pm.
- 

## Grammar

### Insight

... **é que** ...? ... *is it that* ...?

Often, the expression **é que** (*is it that*) is inserted into a question to either emphasize something important, or simply to enhance the flow of the sentence. If you have studied French, you will recognize the expression **est-ce que**. **Onde é que você trabalha?** *Where is it that you work?*

## Transport

To talk about means of transport, you use a verb (usually **ir** – *to go*), plus **de** plus the transport. There are a couple of exceptions. The following table contains some examples.

de	{	<b>carro</b> <i>car</i>	a	{	<b>cavalo</b> <i>horse</i>	
		<b>ônibus</b> <i>bus</i>			<b>pé</b> <i>foot</i>	
		<b>bicicleta</b> <i>bicycle</i>				
		<b>ônibus (de luxo)</b> <i>coach</i>				
		<b>metrô</b> <i>underground</i>				
		<b>motocicleta</b> <i>motorbike</i>				
		<b>avião</b> <i>aeroplane</i>				
		<b>trem</b> <i>train</i>				
		<b>barco</b> <i>boat</i>				

### Two irregular verbs – **pedir/sair**

These two verbs have certain irregularities, so be careful when using them. In the present tense they are:

<i>pedir</i>	<i>to ask for</i>	<i>sair</i>	<i>to go out</i>
<b>peço</b>		<b>saio</b>	
<b>pede</b>		<b>sai</b>	
<b>pedimos</b>		<b>saímos</b>	
<b>pedem</b>		<b>saem</b>	

### Test yourself

<b>é o/a mais ... de ...</b>	<i>it's the most ... in the ...</i>
<b>é mais/menos ... (do/ de) que ...</b>	<i>it's more/less ... than ...</i>
<b>a que horas começa/termina?</b>	<i>at what time do you start/finish?</i>
<b>começo/termino às ...</b>	<i>I start/finish at ...</i>
<b>ao meio dia/à meia noite</b>	<i>at midday/midnight</i>
<b>(você) mora em ...?</b>	<i>do you live in ...?</i>
<b>como vai ao trabalho?</b>	<i>how do you get to work?</i>
<b>vou de carro/bicicleta/táxi</b>	<i>I go by car/bicycle/taxi</i>
<b>saio por volta das ...</b>	<i>I leave about ... o'clock</i>
<b>fico trabalhando até ...</b>	<i>I stay/remain working until ...</i>

## Practice

### CD1, TR 6, 02:20

- 1 Look at the following extract from Nelson's diary, then listen to him describing his daily routine and fill in the gaps in his diary with activities or times, as though he has written it himself.

8.15	a ?
8.50	<i>chego ao trabalho</i>
9.00	b ?
10.00	
c ?	<i>como o almoço</i>
d ?	
17.35	
e ?	<i>chego em casa</i>

- 2 Fill in the gaps with appropriate times.

a Sónia sai de casa \_\_\_\_\_



b Miguel vai ao trabalho \_\_\_\_\_



c Ana pega o ônibus \_\_\_\_\_



d Eu saio da escola \_\_\_\_\_



e José come o almoço \_\_\_\_\_



f Sylvia chega em casa \_\_\_\_\_



**3** Make sentences describing where places are in relation to each other, writing out in Portuguese the distances.

- a [Portugal] é a [600 km] da [France].
- b [Brazil] é a [1896 km] do [Mexico].
- c [England] é a [1247 km] de [Portugal].
- d [USA] são a [6,125 km] da [Argentina].

**4** Match the questions with the answers.

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a Como vai ao trabalho?         | i Mais ou menos 120.       |
| b Quantas pessoas trabalham lá? | ii Ao meio-dia.            |
| c Você mora em Londres?         | iii Vou de ônibus.         |
| d A que horas come o almoço?    | iv Não, vou a um café.     |
| e Você come no escritório?      | v Não, moro em Manchester. |

---

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

People do all kinds of work. Look at these advertisements overleaf, and see if you can answer these questions.

- 1** Luci is a fortune-teller – true or false?
- 2** What language must you speak to get the au pair's job?
- 3** Which advertisement would you answer if you needed some sewing doing?
- 4** Who can help you if you are suffering from stress?
- 5** The 26-year-old Brazilian girl would like to be a teacher – true or false?
- 6** Where might you apply for a job if you enjoyed driving?

a

Gina, massagista  
terapêutica

## **KIRODRENAGEM**

Trata: celulite, gorduras  
localizadas, dores, stress.

Atende a domicílio

Para marcar hora

ligue 371330

b

## **Brasileira**

26 anos, 1,56m, falando  
espanhol, inglês, gostaria  
de realizar seu grande  
sonho como atriz,  
dançarina de samba,  
lambada, etc.

Favor contatar 0389667

c

## **TARÔ & TRABALHOS ESPIRITUAIS**

Se você tem problemas,  
consulte Luci  
484949

d

## **Costuras em geral:**

Coletas para  
garçons  
Reformas, etc.  
**6900372**

e

## **AEROPORTO**

- Motoristas profissionais
- Carros novos e confortáveis
- Eficiência e pontualidade
- Serviço de classe

A partir de R\$ 26

Tel: 1388926

f

## **Procura-se AU PAIR**

que fale português, para  
nos ajudar com a casa e o  
nosso filho de 4 anos.  
Fins de semana livres.

Fale com Lucila

**568221**

# 6

## O que faz no tempo livre?

### What do you do in your free time?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to talk about leisure time*
- *How to discuss what you like doing*
- *How to talk about leisure facilities and entertainment*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia and the Ferreiras discuss their favourite leisure activities.

- José** Sylvia, o que você faz no seu tempo livre?
- Sylvia** Adoro ler. Durante a semana, quando volto do trabalho, gosto muito de escutar um pouco de música, e ler um bom livro.
- José** Que tipo de livros prefere?
- Sylvia** Prefiro os livros policiais, mas também leio muitos jornais.
- Marli** E qual é a música de que você gosta mais?
- Sylvia** Gosto da música latina, mas para relaxar ouço música clássica.
- Marli** Vai adorar a música popular brasileira – é ótima para dançar.
- Sylvia** Vocês, o que fazem nas horas vagas?

(Contd)

CD1, TR 7, 00:09

- José** Aos fins de semana costumamos passar tempo no clube – nadando, jogando tênis, relaxando no bar. Pessoalmente gosto de jogar golfe, mas Marli não gosta.
- Marli** É verdade, eu prefiro fazer cooper bem cedo de manhã, e aos domingos pratico ioga.
- Sylvia** E a televisão? As famosas telenovelas brasileiras?
- Marli** Só quando não temos mais nada a fazer.

**o que você/s faz/em?** *what do you (sing/pl) do?*

**o tempo livre/as horas vagas** *free/leisure time*

**adoro/gosto** *I love/like*

**ler** *to read*

**quando** *when*

**volto/leio/ouço** *I return/read/listen*

**ouvir/escutar** *to hear/listen to*

**a música latina/clássica** *Latin/classical music*

**a música popular brasileira** *Brazilian pop music*

**livro (o)** *book*

**que tipo de** *what kind of*

**prefere/prefiro** *s/he prefers, you prefer/I prefer*

**livros policiais (os)** *crime novels*

**jornais (os)** *newspapers*

**relaxar/dançar** *to relax/dance*

**vai adorar** *you're going to love*

**ótimo/a** *great*

**aos fins de semana** *at weekends*

**aos domingos** *on Sundays*

**costumamos** *we usually/we are accustomed to*

**passar tempo** *to spend time*

**clube (o)** *social club*

**nadando/relaxando** *swimming/relaxing*

**jogando tênis** *playing tennis*

**bar (o)** *bar*

**pessoalmente** *personally*

**não gosta** *s/he does not like*

**golfe (o)** *golf*

**é verdade** *it's true*

**fazer cooper** *to go jogging*

**bem cedo** *really early*  
**pratico ioga** *I do yoga*  
**televisão (a)** *TV*  
**as famosas telenovelas brasileiras** *the famous Brazilian soap operas*  
**mais nada a fazer** *nothing else to do*

### Exercise

Say which activities the characters from the dialogue do and don't like doing.

	<i>reading</i>	<i>sports</i>	<i>television</i>	<i>music</i>
<b>a</b> Marli				
<b>b</b> José				
<b>c</b> Sylvia				

## Grammar

### Activity vocabulary

Here are some words you will find useful in order to discuss leisure activities.

### Verbs

**jogar tênis/futebol/vôlei/golfe** *to play tennis/football/volleyball/golf*  
**passar** *to go strolling*  
**correr/fazer cooper** *to run/go jogging*  
**pintar** *to paint*  
**ler livros/revistas/jornais** *to read books/magazines/newspapers*  
**escutar música** *to listen to music*  
**nadar** *to swim*  
**assistir um show/um jogo** *to go to a show/a game*  
**ir a...** *to go to...*



## Nouns

- a piscina** *swimming pool*
- o clube** *social/sports club*
- o museu** *museum*
- o rádio/a TV** *radio/TV*
- o centro esportivo** *sports centre*
- o cinema** *cinema*
- o teatro** *theatre*
- o campo** *countryside*
- o estádio** *sports/football stadium*

## Likes/dislikes/preferences

Some important verbs to express your likes and dislikes are:

### QUICK VOCAB

- gostar (de)** *to like*
- não gostar (de)** *to not like*
- adorar** *to adore*
- detestar** *to detest*
- preferir** *to prefer*
- gostar mais (de)** *to like most/more*

When talking about activities, all these verbs are followed by an infinitive (remember, that is the part of the verb ending in -r which you will find in the dictionary). Be careful with the *I* person of **preferir**: it is **prefiro**. For example:

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Prefiro ler.</b>                 | <i>I prefer reading/to read.</i>           |
| <b>Adoro jogar golfe.</b>           | <i>I love playing/to play golf.</i>        |
| <b>Lúcia prefere ver televisão.</b> | <i>Lucia prefers to watch/watching TV.</i> |
| <b>João gosta mais de nadar.</b>    | <i>John likes to swim/swimming most.</i>   |

### Gostar (de) *To like*

**Gostar** is always followed by **de**. If the verb is used with a noun, you must remember to combine the **de** with words like **o, a, um, uma** etc. if appropriate. For example:

**Gostamos de pintar.**

*We like to paint/painting.*

**Gosto do sol.**

*I like the sun.*

**Ele gosta mais da cerveja.**

*He likes the beer most.*

The 'de' is left out when the verb is used on its own, for example, as an answer to a question: **você gosta de vinho? Sim, gosto.** *Do you like wine? Yes I do (like it).*

### Irregular plurals

Nouns and adjectives which end in **-l** in the singular have irregular endings, as you saw in the dialogue:

**o jornal – jornais**

**policia – policiais**

Be on the look-out for others as you develop your reading skills.

### More irregular verbs

Some more important verbs with irregularities.

<b>fazer to do, make</b>	<b>ler to read</b>	<b>ouvir to hear</b>
<b>faço</b>	<b>leio</b>	<b>ouço</b>
<b>faz</b>	<b>lê</b>	<b>ouve</b>
<b>fazemos</b>	<b>lemos</b>	<b>ouvimos</b>
<b>fazem</b>	<b>leem</b>	<b>ouvem</b>

### Time routines

🔊 **CD1, TR 7, 01:56**

The days of the week are:

**segunda-feira**

*Monday*

**sexta-feira**

*Friday*

**terça-feira**

*Tuesday*

**sábado**

*Saturday*

**quarta-feira**

*Wednesday*

**domingo**

*Sunday*

**quinta-feira**

*Thursday*

## Insight

The weekdays are all feminine, whilst the weekend days are masculine. Often **-feira** is dropped, people referring simply to **segunda**, etc. They are abbreviated thus: **2a**, **3a**, etc.

To say when you do certain activities, you can say:

<b>aos (nos) sábados/aos (nos) domingos/ao (no) fim de semana</b>	<i>on Saturdays/Sundays/at the weekend</i>
<b>às (nas) segundas, terças, etc.</b>	<i>on Mondays, Tuesdays, etc.</i>
<b>todos/as os/as</b>	<i>every (lit. all the...)</i>
<b>todos os sábados</b>	<i>every Saturday</i>
<b>cada</b>	<i>each, every</i>
<b>cada quinta</b>	<i>every Thursday</i>

**-ando** *-ing*

The Portuguese equivalent of the *-ing* form of verbs is formed thus: verb in infinitive minus the ending (**-ar/-er/-ir**) + **-ando/-endo/-indo**. For example:

**escutar** *to listen (to)* **escut-** + **-ando** = **escutando** *listening to*

<b>Ele prefere ficar em casa escutando música.</b>	<i>He prefers to stay at home listening to music.</i>
--	---

BUT to say *I like swimming* you must still use the structure mentioned earlier with the verb to like – **gostar de/adorar** + infinitive, e.g. **gosto de nadar** *I like to swim/swimming*.

---

## Dialogue 2

The Ferreiras take Sylvia out to a local bar.

- José** Quer provar uma bebida nacional, Sylvia?
- Sylvia** O que é?
- José** É caipirinha. Sabe o que é?
- Sylvia** Não faço ideia.
- Marli** É uma delícia – feita de cachaça, um aguardente de cana de açúcar, com limão, açúcar e água. É um bocado forte.
- Sylvia** Então, por que não?
- José** Garçom, por favor.
- Garçom** Pois não?
- José** Duas caipirinhas e uma batida de morango.
- Garçom** Muito bem.
- Marli** Sylvia, você vai ao teatro em Manchester?
- Sylvia** De vez em quando sim. Prefiro ir ao cinema quando surge a oportunidade. Há bons teatros aqui?
- Marli** Ah, sim, aqui em São Paulo há muitos – cinemas e teatros com todo tipo de peça – comédia/romance/musical – só que em alguns os ingressos são bastante caros.
- José** Em São Paulo há coisas para todo mundo – cinema, teatro, museu, discoteca, galeria de arte – há de tudo.

**quer provar?** *do you want to try?*

**bebida (a)** *drink*

**nacional** *national*

**o que é?** *what is it?*

**caipirinha (a)** *sugar cane/lime drink*

**não faço ideia** *I've no idea*

**uma delícia** *delicious (a delight)*

**cachaça (a), aguardente (o)** *firewater*

**limão (o)** *lime*

**água (a)** *water*

**um bocado forte** *a bit strong*

**pois não?** *can I help you?*

**uma batida de morango** *a strawberry/wine cocktail*

**quando surge a oportunidade** *when the opportunity arises*

**de vez em quando** *sometimes*

**peça (a)** *play*

**ingressos (os)** *tickets*

**caro/a** *expensive*  
**todo mundo** *everyone*  
**discoteca (a)** *disco*  
**há de tudo** *there's a bit of everything*

### True or false?

Are the following sentences *verdadeiras* or *falsas*?

V      F

- a** Caipirinha is an alcoholic drink.
- b** Sylvia never goes to the theatre.
- c** São Paulo has a wide range of activities.

## Grammar

### Insight

When asking someone if they would like something, you can either say **quer** (lit. *do you want?*), or **queria** (*would you like?*). Despite the latter being considered more polite in English, it is not considered rude to use **quer**, and is common practice throughout Brazil.

Here are the two forms in full:

<b>quero</b>	<i>I want</i>	<b>queria</b>	<i>I would like</i>
<b>quer</b>	<i>you, s/he/it want(s)</i>	<b>queria</b>	<i>you would like, he, she, etc.</i>
<b>queremos</b>	<i>we want</i>	<b>queríamos</b>	<i>we would like</i>
<b>querem</b>	<i>you/they want</i>	<b>queriam</b>	<i>you/they would like</i>

### 'To know' or 'to know'?

There are two verbs for to know in Portuguese – **saber** is *to know a fact or how to do something*; **conhecer** is *to know a person, place and to meet, get to know someone*.

sei  
sabe  
sabemos  
sabem

conheço  
conhece  
conhecemos  
conhecem

e.g. Que horas são? Não sei.  
Maria sabe andar a cavalo.  
Ela conhece meu filho.  
Ainda não conheço Brasília.

*What time is it? I don't know.  
Maria knows how to ride a horse.  
She knows my son.  
I do not know Brasilia yet.*

### Some ...

The full version is:

.....  
:                      algum          alguma          alguns          algumas                      :  
.....

You can also use:

.....  
:                                  um          uma          uns          umas                                  :  
.....

**Algum**, etc. can be contracted with **em** (*in, on*) (**nalgun**) and **de** (*of, from*) (**dalgum**), although you will rarely come across these forms in Brazil.

Study these examples:

**Algumas (umas) pessoas trabalham muito.**      *Some people work a lot.*

**Não gosto de entrar em alguns (nalguns) bares.**      *I don't like going in to some bars.*

### Insight

Many alcoholic drinks in Brazil take as their base the delicious tropical fruits available there. **Batidas** are cocktails of wine, red or white, blended with a fruit – favourites are **batida de coco** coconut, **morango** strawberry, **maracujá** passion fruit, **pêssego** peach. **Caipirinha** is very potent and easily addictive! Lime and sugar are mixed with firewater,

*(Contd)*

commonly referred to as **pinga** or **cachaça**, and is extremely easy to drink in copious amounts. Be careful – it has a kick! During the February carnival many people take to the streets with cans filled with pure pinga tied around their necks. No wonder they keep the samba going for five days!

---

## Test yourself

**o que faz/em no seu tempo  
livre/horas vagas?**

**gosto muito de ler/escutar música  
que prefere?**

**prefiro ...**

**costumo/costumamos ...**

**aos domingos/às segundas**

**você vai ao teatro/cinema?**

**de vez em quando/às vezes**

**há bons teatros/museus aqui?**

**há de tudo**

*what do you do in your free leisure  
time?*

*I like reading/listening to music a lot  
what do you prefer?*

*I prefer ...*

*I/we usually ...*

*on Sundays/Mondays*

*do you go to the theatre/cinema?  
sometimes*

*are there any good theatres/  
museums here?*

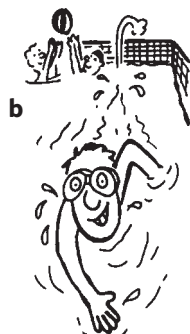
*there's a bit of everything*

## Practice

- 1** Link up the pictures of the activities with what the bubbles are describing.

**i** Gosto de visitar  
o museu

**ii** Paulo adora jogar  
tênis





## 2 Saber or conhecer?

Place the correct form of the appropriate verb in the spaces.

- a Eu \_\_\_\_\_ a França muito bem.
- b Miguel não \_\_\_\_\_ nadar.
- c A que horas vamos ao cinema? Eu não \_\_\_\_\_.
- d Sônia, você \_\_\_\_\_ Senhor Veloso?
- e Eles não \_\_\_\_\_ esta cidade.

## CD1, TR 7, 03:45

3 Listen to three people (speakers 1, 2 and 3) discussing what they like doing in their leisure time, and decide which profile below belongs to which person.

- a likes painting, museums and playing golf
- b prefers watching TV, doesn't like sports
- c likes golf and tennis but doesn't like music

4 Fill in your part of the dialogue about leisure time.

- Francisco** O que você faz no seu tempo livre?  
**You** (Say I love swimming, I go to the swimming pool on Saturdays.)  
**Francisco** E você gosta de música?  
**You** (Say yes, a little.)  
**Francisco** Que tipo de música prefere?  
**You** (Say I prefer jazz. Ask Francisco what he does in his free time.)  
 (Contd)



**Francisco** Bom, gosto muito de jogar golfe, e de ir ao teatro.  
**You** (Say I also like the theatre but the tickets are quite expensive.)

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

- 1** Below is some information about courses you can do at a local college. Paulo has chosen a course on gardening. Look at how he has filled in his request form overleaf, then choose a course yourself, and fill in the blank form that follows with personal details.

Electrônica básica radiotécnica e (áudio televisão p.b. e em cores)		Silk-screen	Golfe	Espanhol
		Desenho artístico e publicitário	Violão	Mecânica de automóveis
Corte e costura	Fotografia	Eletricidade	Eletricidade de automóveis	Auxiliar de escritório
Auxiliar de contabilidade	Auxiliar em administração de empresas	Tricô	Bordado e crochê	Beleza de mulher
Secretariado moderno	Jardinagem	Vinhos	Mestre de obras (edificações)	Natação
Mecânica geral	Mecânica de motos	Refrigeração e ar condicionado	Desenho de mecânica	Desenho arquitetônico
Especialização em gravação digital	Técnicas vendas	Informática	Inglês	Caligrafia

<b>INSTITUTO UNIVERSAL BRASILEIRO SP</b>			
Av. Rio Branco, 781 – Caixa Postal 5058 – São Paulo – CEP 01061-970			
Sr. Diretor, peço Grátis o folheto sobre o(s) curso(s) profissionalizante(s)			
livre(s) de		<u>Jardinagem</u>	COURSE
NOME		<u>Paulo de Oliveira Martins</u>	
RUA		<u>Julieta Mesquita</u>	Nº <u>35</u>
POST CODE	CEP	<u>01326</u>	BAIRRO <u>Centro</u> CX. POSTAL
	CIDADE	<u>Belo Horizonte</u>	ESTADO <u>Minas</u>
	DISTRICT		
			MAIL BOX No.

<b>INSTITUTO UNIVERSAL BRASILEIRO SP</b>			
Av. Rio Branco, 781 – Caixa Postal 5058 – São Paulo – CEP 01061-970			
Sr. Diretor, peço Grátis o folheto sobre o(s) curso(s) profissionalizante(s)			
livre(s) de			
NOME			
RUA		Nº	
CEP	BAIRRO	CX. POSTAL	
CIDADE	ESTADO		

- 2** Which courses would you choose if you wanted to study:
- a** The guitar
  - b** General mechanics
  - c** Art and design

## Pois não?

### Can I help you?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to obtain goods and services*
- *How to buy clothes and shoes*
- *How to discuss sizes*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia has gone to visit Rio and decides to do some shopping in a fashion store (a **boutique**) before starting her journey northwards.

CD1, TR 8, 00:07

<b>Empregada</b>	Pois não?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Queria ver umas camisetas, por favor.
<b>Empregada</b>	Claro. Qual é o seu tamanho?
<b>Sylvia</b>	É o 42.
<b>Empregada</b>	Você procura uma cor em particular?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Tem em verde, ou azul?
<b>Empregada</b>	Sim, temos estas aqui, e também aquelas ali em outro estilo. São todas de algodão.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Posso provar?
<b>Empregada</b>	Claro – a cabine de provas é ali ao fundo. ( <i>Sylvia comes out of the changing room.</i> )
<b>Empregada</b>	Então, já escolheu?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Acho que sim. Vou levar esta azul, mas tem a outra em verde-escuro?

<b>Empregada</b>	Neste momento não, sinto muito.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Não faz mal. Levo as duas. Quanto é?
<b>Empregada</b>	São 36 reais ao todo. Quer pagar ali na caixa?
	Leve este talão consigo. Depois volte aqui para pegar as camisetas.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Obrigada.

**Pois não?** *Can I help you?*  
**camisetas (as)** *t-shirts*  
**claro** *of course*  
**tamanho (o)** *size*  
**você procura ...?** *are you looking for ...?*  
**uma cor em particular** *a particular colour*  
**estilo (o)** *style*  
**posso provar?** *may I try (it) on?*  
**cabine de provas (a)** *changing room*  
**ao fundo** *at the bottom, end*  
**já escolheu?** *have you chosen yet?*  
**acho que sim** *I think so*  
**vou levar** *I'll take*  
**neste momento** *at the moment*  
**sinto muito** *I'm sorry*  
**não faz mal** *that's OK*  
**quanto é?** *how much is it/that?*  
**ao todo** *in all*  
**pagar** *to pay for*  
**caixa (a)** *till/check-out*  
**leve/volte** *take/return*  
**talão (o)** *ticket/stub*  
**consigo** *with you*

### Exercise 1

Only one of these statements is true. Which one?

- a** O tamanho da Sylvia é quarenta e quatro.
- b** A cabine de provas é à esquerda.
- c** Sylvia leva duas camisetas.

---

## Grammar

**Posso ...?** *May I ...?*

**Posso** *may I/can I* can be used with all kinds of verbs in the infinitive, and is very useful. **Posso ver?** *May I see, have a look?*  
**Posso experimentar, provar?** *Can I try on, try something, taste?*  
**Posso passar?** *May I pass, get by?* The verb is **poder** *to be able to* and in full is:

**posso**  
**pode**

**podemos**  
**podem**

**I think so**

The verb **achar** has various meanings *to find, think, reckon*. It can be used when asking/giving opinions:

**Acho que sim/não.** *I think so/not.*  
**O que você acha?** *What do you think?*  
**Acho muito bonito.** *I think (it's) very pretty.*

You can also use **creio que** *I believe (that)* and **penso que** *I think (that)*.

In English we often say things like 'I think I'll go...', but in Portuguese you have to remember to say '*I think THAT I'll go...*'.  
**Penso QUE** *vou...*

**Levo** *I'll take*

**Levo** is in fact the present tense of the verb even though in English we are saying *I will take* (i.e. future). This replacement of a future action with a verb in the present tense is very common in Portuguese, especially in spoken dialogue. For example:

**Amanhã vejo meu irmão.** *Tomorrow I'll see my brother.*  
**Falamos a semana que vem.** *We'll talk next week.*

As in English, you can also use the verb *to go* (**ir**) to express future action. For example:

**Vou à cidade amanhã.** *I'm going to town tomorrow.*

The future tense will be introduced later in the course.

### **Leve..., volte ...: commands**

In Unit 4, you learnt how to give directions, politely telling people what to do by saying you (*do*) *this/that*. There are also other ways of ordering people to do things more directly. These are called *commands*, or more technically *imperatives*. Remember that you do not need to be annoyed with someone in order to tell them to do or not do something. To form the commands, look at the following steps:

<b>-ar verbs: comprar</b>	<b>-er verbs: comer</b>	<b>-ir verbs: partir</b>
(você) <b>compra</b> = you buy	<b>come</b> = you eat	<b>parte</b> = you leave

To form the command change the verb endings to the following:

<b>compre!</b> = buy!	<b>coma!</b> = eat!	<b>parta!</b> = leave!
-----------------------	---------------------	------------------------

There is a crossing-over of endings – the **-ar** verbs take an **-e**, and the **-er/-ir** verbs take an **-a**. To command more than one person, add an **-m**. For example:

<b>(vocês) comprem!</b>	<b>comam!</b>	<b>partam!</b>
-------------------------	---------------	----------------

To tell somebody not to do something, simply place **não** in front – **não coma!** *don't eat!* Be careful with irregular verbs: here is a small selection of some you have already come across:

	Sing. Command	Pl. command
<b>Fazer</b> to do, make	<b>faça!</b>	<b>façam!</b>
<b>Ver</b> to see	<b>veja!</b>	<b>vejam!</b>

(Contd)

	<i>Sing. Command</i>	<i>Pl. command</i>
<b>Ir</b> <i>to go</i>	<b>vá!</b>	<b>vão!</b>
<b>Vir</b> <i>to come</i>	<b>venha!</b>	<b>venham!</b>
<b>Pedir</b> <i>to ask for</i>	<b>peça!</b>	<b>peçam!</b>

## Insight

Be on the look-out for irregular verbs, but don't expect to take them on board all at once. They are particularly tricky in Portuguese, and take time to learn.

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia next goes to a shoe shop – **a sapataria**.

CD1, TR 8, 01:27

- Sylvia** Bom dia. Queria ver uns sapatos em couro, por favor. Tem?
- Empregada** Sim, temos. Que número é que você calça?
- Sylvia** Acho que é o 38, mas não tenho certeza.
- Empregada** Bom, em 38 temos estes, que estão muito na moda agora.
- Sylvia** Sim, são muito bonitos, mas queria alguma coisa mais resistente – para andar.
- Empregada** Temos estas botas, que são cómodas, e estão em liquidação esta semana.
- Sylvia** Posso experimentar?
- Empregada** Claro. Tome!
- Sylvia** São muito pequenas. Tem outras maiores?
- Empregada** Sim, aqui em 39.
- Sylvia** Ah, sim, estas são mais cómodas. O que você acha?
- Empregada** Apesar de ser resistentes, também é 'chique'. Ficam-lhe bem.
- Sylvia** Quanto custam?
- Empregada** Com o desconto, custam 85 reais.
- Sylvia** Que pechincha!

**sapatos (os)** *shoes*  
**couro (o)** *leather*  
**tem?** *do you have?*  
**que número ... calça?** *what size do you take?*  
**não tenho certeza** *I'm not sure*  
**estar na moda** *to be in fashion*  
**resistente** *solid/firm*  
**andar** *to walk*  
**botas (as)** *boots*  
**cômodas** *comfortable*  
**em liquidação** *in the sale*  
**são muito pequenas** *they're too (very) small*  
**apesar de ser** *in spite of being*  
**chique** *chic*  
**ficam-lhe bem** *they suit you*  
**quanto custa/m** *how much does it/do they cost?*  
**desconto (o)** *discount*  
**que pechincha** *what a bargain*

## Exercise 2

Answer three questions in Portuguese, based on the dialogue.

- a** O que a Sylvia quer comprar? \_\_\_\_\_
- b** Qual é o número das botas que ela compra? \_\_\_\_\_
- c** Quanto custam? \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

### Clothes check-list

<b>a blusa</b> <i>blouse</i>	<b>a camisa</b> <i>shirt</i>
<b>a calça</b> <i>trousers</i>	<b>o vestido</b> <i>dress</i>
<b>a saia</b> <i>skirt</i>	<b>as cuecas</b> <i>underpants</i>
<b>as calcinhas</b> <i>knickers</i>	<b>o sutiã</b> <i>bra</i>
<b>as meias</b> <i>socks</i>	<b>as sandálias</b> <i>sandals</i>
<b>as luvas</b> <i>gloves</i>	<b>o chapéu</b> <i>hat</i>



## Materials

### QUICK VOCAB

**algodão** *cotton*

**couro** *leather*

**lã** *wool*

**cetim** *satin*

**linho** *linen*

**poliéster** *polyester*

**plástico** *plastic*

**seda** *silk*

**malha** *jersey/knitwear*

**fibras sintéticas** *synthetic fibres*

## Shops

Often the name of a shop is derived from the item sold there.

### QUICK VOCAB

**sapatos** *shoes*

**pão** *bread*

**livro** *book*

**pastel** *pastry, cake*

**tabaco** *tobacco*

**fruta** *fruit*

**bilhete** *ticket*

**sapataria** *shoe shop*

**padaria** *baker's*

**livraria** *book shop*

**pastelaria** *cake shop*

**tabacaria** *tobacconist's*

**frutaria** *fruiterer*

**bilheteria** *ticket office*

---

## Test yourself

**Queria/posso ... ver/provar/  
experimentar?**

*I would like to/may I ... see/try on/try?*

**Qual tamanho/que número calça?**

*What size/ What size shoe do you take?*

**Em que cor?**

*In which colour?*

**Tem .../tem em ...?**

*Do you have/do you have in ...?*

**Quanto é/quanto custa/m?**

*How much is it/does it/they cost?*

**Levo/vou levar**

*I'll take/I'm going to take*

**Acho que**

*I think that*

**É/são muito pequeno/s, grande/s**

*It is/they are too small/large*

**Fica/m-lhe bem**

*It suits/they suit you*

---

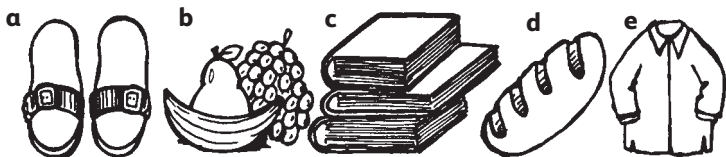
## Insight

Rio is a city of great contrasts. It is arguably one of the most beautiful cities in the world, with its breathtaking scenery and renowned beaches. But there is also great poverty in the

shantytowns (**as favelas**). Many will have heard of the police death squads hired by business people to rid the streets of the children who sleep rough. Rio is everything from squalor to extravagance, but it all comes together for its magnificent February carnival – **o carnaval**. Do be careful in Rio – exercise caution when out and about, but don't be too afraid to enjoy its beauty. And don't be shocked by the amount of flesh shown on the beach. Brazilian women don't often sunbathe topless, but their bikinis reveal an awful lot of flesh. Often referred to as '**fio dental**' bikinis (*dental floss!*), they leave little to the imagination. Tone up before you venture on to Copacabana, Ipanema and Leblon!

## Practice

- 1 Match up the items to be bought with the appropriate shops.  
You may wish to look back to Unit 4 to refresh your memory.



- i livraria      ii sapataria      iii mercado      iv açougue  
v boutique      vi padaria

- 2 Supply your part of the dialogue in a fashion store

**You** (Say do you have skirts?)  
**Empregada** Sim, temos. Qual é seu tamanho?  
**You** (Say I think it's 42.)  
**Empregada** Temos estas, em vermelho e preto.  
**You** (Say do you have it in light-blue?)  
**Empregada** Sim, temos esta, em outro estilo.

(Contd)

<b>You</b>	(Ask how much it is?)
<b>Empregada</b>	Esta custa 46 reais
<b>You</b>	(Say I'll take this one in blue and that one in black.)
<b>Empregada</b>	São 92 reais ao todo.
<b>You</b>	(Say thank you.)

**3** Fill in the gaps by supplying the correct command form of the verb. Then say what each one means.

- a** (você) [comprar] \_\_\_\_\_ a blusa! \_\_\_\_\_
- b** (vocês) [comer] \_\_\_\_\_ o pão! \_\_\_\_\_
- c** (vocês) [ir] \_\_\_\_\_ por aqui! \_\_\_\_\_
- d** (você) [não fazer] \_\_\_\_\_ barulho! \_\_\_\_\_
- e** (você) [trabalhar] \_\_\_\_\_ bem! \_\_\_\_\_
- f** (vocês) [não falar] \_\_\_\_\_ muito! \_\_\_\_\_

**CD1, TR 8, 02:41**

**4** Listen to someone in a shoe shop, and tick the appropriate pictures for their purchases.

**a** Asks for



**b** Size



**c** Colour

black      brown      green

**d** Do they fit?



**e** Price



## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the advice given to people under their horoscope and answer the following:

- a** What should Pisces be eating?
- b** What culinary advice is given to Cancer?
- c** What should Libra do for their friends?
- d** What should Capricorn do on arriving home?
- e** What should Aries do before taking a decision?
- f** What should Leo treat themselves to?

<b>HORÓSCOPO</b>		
<b>PREVISÕES PARA O PERÍODO DE 28 DE DEZEMBRO A 28 DE JANEIRO</b>		
<b>CAPRICÓRNIO</b> 22 DEZ. a 20 JAN. <b>Dica:</b> Quando chegar em casa tome um bom banho de saís.	<b>TOURO</b> 21 ABRIL a 20 MAIO <b>Dica:</b> Gente. Isso é tudo o que você precisa para melhorar sua vida.	<b>VIRGEM</b> 23 AGO. a 22 SET. <b>Dica:</b> Aposte nos melhores produtos de beleza. Eles vão te ajudar.
<b>AQUÁRIO</b> 21 JAN. a 19 FEV. <b>Dica:</b> Que tal um novo corte de cabelo? Você vai se sentir outra ...	<b>GÊMEOS</b> 21 MAIO a 20 JUNHO <b>Dica:</b> Não fique apenas pensando em cursos. Faça a matrícula já!	<b>LIBRA</b> 23 SET. a 22 OUT. <b>Dica:</b> Faça um jantar para os seus amigos e ponha um sorriso no rosto, menina.
<b>PEIXES</b> 20 FEV. a 20 MAR. <b>Dica:</b> Abuse das saladas. Elas irão manter seu bom humor no verão.	<b>CÂNCER</b> 21 JUNHO a 21 JULHO <b>Dica:</b> Troque os doces por frutas. Seus dentes vão agradecer.	<b>ESCORPIÃO</b> 23 OUT. a 21 NOV. <b>Dica:</b> O sol chegou! Aproveite para colocar o bronzeador em dia também.
<b>ÁRIES</b> 21 MAR. a 20 ABRIL <b>Dica:</b> Relaxe muito antes de tomar qualquer decisão.	<b>LEÃO</b> 22 JULHO a 22 AGO. <b>Dica:</b> Procure uma boa mão oriental e entregue-se às massagens.	<b>SAGITÁRIO</b> 22 NOV. a 21 DEZ. <b>Dica:</b> Viagens à vista. Não tenha medo. Arrume as malas para voar linda.

## Que vai comer?

### What are you going to eat?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to order a meal**
- **More about making requests**
- **About typical Brazilian food**

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia goes out to a restaurant with a friend.

CD1, TR 9, 00:12

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Márcia</b> | Tem uma mesa livre?   |
| <b>Garçom</b> | São quantos?  |
| <b>Márcia</b> | Somos só dois.  |
| <b>Garçom</b> | Temos esta mesa aqui perto da porta, ou aquela ali ao fundo.                    |
| <b>Márcia</b> | Esta está bem. Traga o cardápio por favor.                                      |
| <b>Garçom</b> | Tome.   |
| <b>Márcia</b> | Deixe ver. O que temos? Há saladas e sopas para começar. Que vai pedir, Sylvia? |
| <b>Sylvia</b> | Não tenho muita fome. Quero uma sopa quentinha.                                 |
| <b>Márcia</b> | A canja é boa e típica daqui. É feita de galinha.                               |
| <b>Sylvia</b> | Então é isto para mim.  |
| <b>Márcia</b> | Eu vou pedir uma salada mista para mim.   |

**mesa (a)** *table*

**livre** *free*

**são quantos?** *how many of you are there?*

**somos ...** *there are ... of us*

**porta (a)** *door*

**traga** *bring*

**cardápio (o)** *menu*

**tome** *here you are/take*

**deixe ver** *let (me) see*

**saladas (as)/salada mista (a)** *salads/mixed salad*

**sopas (as)/sopa quentinha (a)** *soups/hot soup*

**para começar** *to start with*

**não tenho muita fome** *I'm not very hungry*

**canja (a)** *chicken broth*

**típica daqui** *typical of here*

**é feita de** *it's made of/from*

**galinha (a)** *chicken*

**é isto para mim** *I'll have this*

## Exercise 1

Say if these statements are **verdadeiro** or **falso**.

V F

- a** They choose a table near the door.
- b** Sylvia is really hungry.
- c** Márcia chooses soup as a starter.

## Grammar

### Traga! *Bring!*

This command comes from the verb **trazer** *to bring*. In the last unit you were advised to keep a look-out for verbs with irregularities, and here is an example of a verb whose irregularity affects the command-form: Present tense: **trago, traz, trazemos, trazem**. The command becomes **Traga! Bring!**

In addition to those listed in Unit 7, other verbs which act in the same way include:

	Present tense	Command
<b>seguir</b> <i>to follow</i>	<b>sigo segue seguimos seguem</b>	<b> siga!</b>
<b>repetir</b> <i>to repeat</i>	<b>repito repete repetimos repetem</b>	<b> repita!</b>
<b>dormir</b> <i>to sleep</i>	<b>durmo dorme dormimos dormem</b>	<b> durma!</b>

**Há ...** *There is/there are ...*

This small word which you met in Unit 4 for directions is extremely versatile. It means *there is/there are*, and when used as a question, also means *is there? are there?* It is particularly useful when requesting information about what is available: **o que há?** *what is there?* **(o) que tem?** *what do you have?* is most commonly used in Brazil as an alternative.

**Ter** *in special expressions*

The verb **ter** (*to have*) is used in certain expressions such as **tenho fome** *I am hungry*; **ter fome** *to be hungry* (literally *to have hunger*).

You will also come across

<b>ter</b>	<b>sede</b>	<i>to be thirsty</i>
	<b>sono</b>	<i>to be sleepy/tired</i>
	<b>calor</b>	<i>to be hot</i>
	<b>frio</b>	<i>to be cold</i>

You can also use **estar com** + **fome**, **sede**, etc. literally *to be with hunger, thirst*, etc.

## Insight

When you hear new expressions with verbs in them, don't panic! If you understand the other key words, you are off to a good start. '**Calor**', for example, is an easy one to remember.

## Dialogue 2

The waiter takes the order.

<b>Garçom</b>	Então, já escolheram? Que vão comer?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Para começar, uma salada mista e uma canja.
<b>Garçom</b>	E depois?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Um lombo assado e um filé de peixe frito com batatas fritas, arroz e legumes para dois.
<b>Garçom</b>	E para beber?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Uma garrafa do vinho da casa.
<b>Garçom</b>	Branco ou tinto?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Branco. E traga uma jarra de água também por favor – tenho muita sede.
<b>Garçom</b>	Muito bem.

**já escolheram?** *have you (pl.) chosen yet?*

**lombo assado (o)** *roast pork loin*

**filé de peixe frito (o)** *fried fish fillet*

**batatas fritas (as)** *chips*

**arroz (o)** *rice*

**legumes (os)** *vegetables*

**garrafa (a)** *bottle*

**o vinho da casa** *the house wine*

**tinto** *red (wine)*

**jarra (a)** *jug*

### Exercise 2

Answer 'yes' or 'no'.

YES NO

- a** Do they order vegetables for both of them?
- b** Do they ask for red wine?
- c** Is Sylvia thirsty?



## Insight

The word **tinto** (*red*) is only used for red wine. The everyday word for *red* is **vermelho** or **encarnado**.

## Dialogue 3

The meal continues.

- Márcia** Garçom, por favor!  
**Garçom** Diga.  
**Márcia** Pode trazer mais pão e outra jarra de água, por favor?  
**Garçom** Claro. Vão querer sobremesas?  
**Sylvia** O que tem?  
**Garçom** Hoje temos pudim de caramelo, doce de coco, fruta, e sorvete.  
**Márcia** Que sabores de sorvete tem?  
**Garçom** Chocolate, morango, baunilha e avelã.  
**Márcia** Bom, eu quero um sorvete de morango.  
**Sylvia** Eu vou provar o pudim.  
**Garçom** E café?  
**Márcia** Sim, dois cafezinhos.

### QUICK VOCAB

**pode trazer** *can you bring*

**mais pão** *more bread*

**sobremesas (as)** *desserts*

**hoje** *today*

**pudim de caramelo (o)** *creme caramel*

**doce de coco (o)** *coconut dessert*

**fruta (a)** *fruit*

**sorvete (o)** *ice cream*

**sabores (os)** *flavours*

**chocolate** *chocolate*

**morango** *strawberry*

**baunilha** *vanilla*

**avelã** *hazelnut*

## Dialogue 4

Paying the bill.

**Márcia** A conta, por favor.  
**Garçom** Aqui está.  
**Sylvia** Quanto é, Márcia?  
**Márcia** São 36 reais.  
**Sylvia** Tome aqui.  
**Márcia** Imagine! Pago eu! Insisto. Você é minha convidada.  
**Sylvia** Bom, a próxima vez eu pago. Obrigada. Foi um jantar delicioso. Mas já é tarde. São nove e meia, e amanhã parto para o nordeste.

**foi um jantar delicioso** *it was a delicious dinner*

**conta (a)** *bill*

**pago eu** *I'll pay*

**insisto** *I insist*

**minha convidada** *my guest*

**a próxima vez** *next time*

**já é tarde** *it's already late*

**o nordeste** *the northeast*

**imagine!** *get away/never!*

QUICK VOCAB

## Test yourself

**Tem uma mesa livre?**

*Do you have a table free?*

**Traga o cardápio, por favor**

*Please bring the menu.*

**Que vai pedir/comer?**

*What are you going to have/eat?*

**O que há/tem? Há/Tem ...**

*What is there/do you have?*

*There is ...*

**Tenho fome/sede.**

*I'm hungry/thirsty.*

**Para começar/e depois/para beber**

*For starters/and then/to drink*

**Pode trazer mais .../outro/a ...**

*Can you bring more .../another ...*

**Que sabores?**

*What flavours?*

**A conta, por favor.**

*The bill please.*

**Foi um (jantar) delicioso.**

*It was a delicious (dinner).*

## Insight

The Brazilians' main staple of food is rice and black beans – **arroz e feijão**, usually eaten with steak **um filé** and chips and salad. You can hear the beans cooking away all day in pressure cookers down many residential streets. When eating out, popular choices include Italian food (there is a huge Italian community in and around São Paulo); chicken (**frango**) and fish (**peixe**). Sunday is the day for the infamous black bean stew cooked with all kinds of sausage and off-cuts – *feijoada*. Sometimes it's better not to enquire what every bit is! It is served with rice, **couve à mineira** (*sautéd greens*) and **farofa** – a breadcrumb mixture (**manioc**), and also a slice of orange to aid digestion. In the south you are more likely to eat in a **churrascaria-rodízio** – a sort of organized barbecue, where waiters circle the tables with swordful of every meat you can imagine. As your plate empties you simply catch the waiters' attention. There is usually a help-yourself salad bar, and normally you pay one price and eat until you burst. This is particularly popular in the **gaúcho** – cowboy-regions of the south. More about these later in the course.

Meals are leisurely affairs, unless you are working – but even here many a deal has been clinched over an extended lunch.

## Typical Brazilian food

### Entradas – starters

av

**canja** *chicken broth*  
**creme de aspargos**  
*asparagus soup*  
**camarão** *prawns*

**lula frita** *fried squid*  
**salada mista** *tomato/lettuce salad*  
**salada de palmito** *salad of palm hearts*

### Prato principal – main course

av

**lombo assado** *roast pork loin*  
**frango ensopado** *chicken stew*  
**ovelha** *lamb*

**massa** *pasta*  
**espeto misto** *mixed kebab*  
**bife na brasa** *barbecued steak*

## Guarnições – side dishes

**arroz** *rice*  
**legumes** *vegetables*  
**ervilhas** *peas*

**batatas fritas** *chips*  
**farofa** *manioc mixture*  
**feijão** *beans*

qv

## Sobremesas – desserts

**sorvete** *ice cream*  
**fruta** *fruit*

**pudim de caramelo** *creme caramel*  
**doce de coco** *coconut dessert*

qv

## Bebidas – drinks

**refrigerantes** *soft drinks*  
**cerveja** *beer*  
**suco de fruta** *fruit juice*  
**água** *water*

**vinho** *wine*

qv

---

## Practice

- 1 Can you do the following?
  - a Say do you have a table free?
  - b Say there are five of us.
  - c Say I'm not thirsty.
  - d Ask your friend what s/he is going to have.
  - e Call the waiter across.
  - f Ask for the bill.
- 2 Place an appropriate command from the box over the page into the spaces.
  - a Para o museu? \_\_\_\_\_ por esta rua!
  - b \_\_\_\_\_ favor!
  - c Não \_\_\_\_\_ todo o vinho!
  - d \_\_\_\_\_ a frase!
  - e Não \_\_\_\_\_ tão rápido!
  - f Por favor, \_\_\_\_\_ mais água!

traga beba sigam coma falem faça repitam

- 3** Use the food lists on the previous pages to help you complete your part of this dialogue.

**Garçom** Então, já escolheu? Que vai comer?  
**You** (Say to start, a vegetable soup.)  
**Garçom** E depois?  
**You** (Say lamb with rice and salad.)  
**Garçom** E para beber?  
**You** (Say a beer and a jug of water.)  
**Garçom** Muito bem.

CD1, TR 9, 01:21

- 4** Listen to the dialogue about desserts and fill in the gaps with the missing words.

**A** Vão querer \_\_\_\_\_?

**B** O que tem?

**A** \_\_\_\_\_ temos fruta, \_\_\_\_\_, e pudim.

**B** Que sabores de sorvete tem?

**A** Chocolate, \_\_\_\_\_, e avelã.

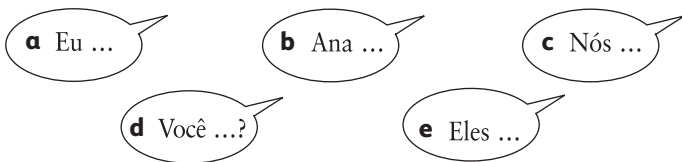
**B** Bom, eu quero um de \_\_\_\_\_.

**A** E café?

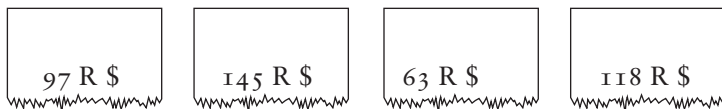
**B** \_\_\_\_\_ um cafezinho.

- 5** Fill in the bubbles with the correct form of the verb **ter**, plus the word which describes what the people in the pictures are feeling.





**6** Look at the various bills from restaurants, and match them to the amounts paid below.



- a** sessenta e três reais
- b** cento e quarenta e cinco reais
- c** noventa e sete reais
- d** cento e dezoito reais

**7** Indicate where the following food and drink items would appear on a menu, by ticking the appropriate columns.

		<i>starter</i>	<i>main meal</i>	<i>side dish</i>	<i>dessert</i>	<i>drink</i>
<b>a</b>	sorvete					
<b>b</b>	água					
<b>c</b>	café					
<b>d</b>	sopa					
<b>e</b>	bife					
<b>f</b>	legumes					
<b>g</b>	camarão					
<b>h</b>	farofa					

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the following menu, then the preference of the people dining out with you. Choose a 3-course meal suitable for all concerned.

**Laura** is a vegetarian and cannot eat sugar.

**Marcelo** hates fish/seafood but loves to eat white meat. He loves coconuts.

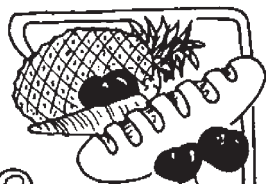
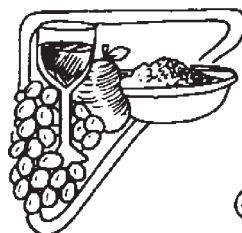
**Sérgio** is allergic to shrimps and doesn't like starting a meal with soup. He enjoys eating a mixture of meats in a main meal, and loves very sweet desserts.

**You** can't manage a starter, but can get through a good steak. You prefer ice-cream for afters.

**Rita** is very traditional, and likes to start her meal with good, hot broth, followed by fish and likes something fresh for dessert.

	<i>Starter</i>	<i>Main Meal</i>	<i>Dessert</i>
Laura			
Marcelo			
Sérgio			
You			
Rita			

# Restaurante o Paraná



## Cardápio

### Entradas

Camarão a Paulista  
Creme de aspargos  
Lula frita  
Canja

### Prato Principal

Bife na Brasa  
frango assado  
Peixe à mineira  
Ovelha na Brasa  
Espeto misto  
Omelete de queijo  
Todos servidos com arroz,  
legumes e batatas

### Sobremesa

Doce de coco  
Pudim de caramelo  
Sorvetes e Sorbet  
Fruta





# 9

## Vai viajar?

### Are you going travelling?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to use public transport**
- **How to ask for change**
- **How to find out departure and arrival times**

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia decides to travel northwards to the cities of Salvador and Fortaleza in the **nordeste**. She needs a taxi to get to the coach station. Listen to her conversation at the taxi rank (**o ponto de táxi**).

CD 1, TR 10, 00:07

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>Sylvia</b>    | Pode me levar à estação rodoviária, por favor?   |
| <b>Motorista</b> | Posso, sim, sem problema. Vai viajar?  |
| <b>Sylvia</b>    | Sim, vou para o nordeste, passar uns dias em Salvador e Fortaleza.   |
| <b>Motorista</b> | Cidades bonitas. Também precisa visitar a cidade de Olinda; é muito histórica e faz parte de nosso patrimônio. |
| <b>Sylvia</b>    | Vou tentar.  |
| <b>Motorista</b> | Aqui estamos.  |
| <b>Sylvia</b>    | Quanto é?  |
| <b>Motorista</b> | 16 reais. Boa viagem.  |

**pode/posso** *can you/I can*  
**levar** *to take*  
**estação (a) rodoviária** *bus station*  
**sem problema** *no problem*  
**viajar** *to travel*  
**passar** *to spend (time), to pass*  
**precisa** *you need*  
**faz parte de** *it's part of*  
**nosso patrimônio** *our heritage*  
**tentar** *to try*  
**boa viagem** *bon voyage*

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia goes to the ticket office (a **bilheteria**) to purchase her coach ticket.

<b>Sylvia</b>	A que horas parte o próximo ônibus de luxo para Salvador?
<b>Empregado</b>	Parte às dez e quinze.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Queria um bilhete para este, se faz favor.
<b>Empregado</b>	De ida ou de ida e volta?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Só de ida.
<b>Empregado</b>	Muito bem. Agora, são 68 reais.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Tem troco para uma nota de cem reais?
<b>Empregado</b>	Sim, tenho. Tome.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Obrigada. O ônibus sai de onde?
<b>Empregado</b>	Sai do portão número 22. É por ali à esquerda.

CD 1, TR 10, 01:13

**o próximo** *the next*  
**bilhete (o)** *ticket*  
**de ida/de ida e volta** *single/return*  
**tem troco para?** *do you have change for?*  
**uma nota de** *a ... note*  
**sai de onde?** *where does it leave from?*  
**o portão número 22** *gate no 22*

---

## Grammar

### Pode me levar ...? Can you take me ...?

In Unit 1 you learnt the Portuguese words known as personal pronouns for *I, you, he*, etc. used as subjects of verbs. In the dialogue above, you were introduced to another pronoun, this time an object of the verb, i.e. one to whom (or which) the action is done directly. In English these *direct object pronouns* are: *me, you, him, her, us, them*. In Portuguese they are:

<b>me</b>	<i>me</i>	<b>nos</b>	<i>us</i>
<b>te</b>	<i>you</i>	<b>os</b>	<i>them, you (pl.)</i>
<b>o</b>	<i>him, you, it</i>	<b>as</b>	<i>them, you (pl.)</i>
<b>a</b>	<i>her, you, it</i>		

In English you may have examples such as *I can see you, you write it quickly, they hit us*, etc. Usually, in standard written Portuguese, these object pronouns are placed after the verb and attached to it by a hyphen (except in certain situations, e.g. negatives or questions). However, the Brazilians tend to place the object pronouns before the verb, whether in a positive or negative statement.

<b>Eu o escrevo</b>	<i>I write it (eu escrevo-o)</i>
<b>Eles nos batem</b>	<i>they hit us (eles batem-nos)</i>
<b>Você não me vê</b>	<i>you do not see me</i>

Often Brazilians will use the object **te** for *you*, instead of **o/a**, despite these latter being the correct forms corresponding to **você**. Thus: **Eu te vejo** *I see you*, and not **Eu o/a vejo**. In colloquial Portuguese, Brazilians may quite often say things like **eu vejo você** *I see you*, which is incorrect, or **eu vejo ele** *I see him* (literally *I see he*).

---

### Insight

It is often the case that pronouns are omitted if there was previous reference to the noun: **Você comprou o livro? Sim, comprei.** *Did you buy the book? Yes I bought (it).*

---

## Nosso *Our*

Nosso is the remaining possessive for you to learn. Here is a reminder of the full table of possessives. Remember to choose the possessive word relating to the object possessed.

	<i>m. sing</i>	<i>f. sing</i>	<i>m. pl.</i>	<i>f. pl.</i>
eu <i>I</i>	meu	minha	meus	minhas
você <i>you</i>	seu	sua	seus	suas
ele <i>he</i>	o ... dele*	a ... dele	os ... dele	as ... dele
ela <i>she</i>	o ... dela*	a ... dela	os ... dela	as ... dela
nós <i>we</i>	nosso	nossa	nossos	nossas
vocês <i>you</i>	seu	sua	seus	suas
eles/elas	o ... deles	a ... deles	os ... deles	as ... delas
they	/delas*	/delas	/delas	/delas

\*If there is no ambiguity, for all forms of *his/her/their* you can also use *seu, sua*, etc. Don't forget, you will also come across examples of *o meu/a nossa*, etc. For example:

Nosso amigo	<i>Our friend</i>
A casa dele	<i>His house</i>
João é o meu amigo;	<i>John is my friend;</i>
sua casa é grande.	<i>his house is big.</i>

## Insight

### 24-hour clock

When travelling, be aware of times given using the twenty-four hour clock. Providing you know your numbers up to 59, you should be OK. The actual structure is a simple adding process, as you learnt in Units 5 and 6, joining the two sets of digits by '**e**' (*and*).

Às dez e quinze	<i>At 10:15</i>
Às treze e trinta e seis	<i>At 13:36</i>
Às vinte e duas e quarenta e cinco	<i>At 22:45</i>

---

## Dialogue 3

Having arrived in Salvador, Sylvia needs to get to the centre.

- Sylvia** Desculpe, senhor. O que faço para chegar ao centro da cidade?
- Sr** Você vai para onde exatamente?
- Sylvia** Não sei muito bem. Ao centro.
- Sr** Bem, tome o ônibus número 5A, que parte daqui, da frente da estação rodoviária, e sai na praça Vicente, que é bem no centro da cidade.
- Sylvia** Obrigada. O senhor conhece um bom hotel aqui?
- Sr** Sim, o hotel Beira-mar é muito bom, e não é nada caro.
- Sylvia** Onde é este hotel?
- Sr** É na Rua Jorge Amado, número 35.
- Sylvia** Muito obrigada.
- Sr** De nada.

QUICK VOCAB

**o que faço para ...** *what do I do in order to ...*

**exatamente** *exactly*

**da frente de** *from in front of*

**é bem ...** *it's right ...*

**não é nada caro** *It's not at all expensive*

---

## Grammar

### How do I ...?

In the dialogue, this expression was translated as **o que faço para?** (*what do I do in order to?*). You may also come across:

**como se faz para ...?**

*how does one ...?*

**como posso ...?**

*how can I ...?*

Both are followed by verbs in the infinitive.

### In front of: prepositions

Prepositions – words of place, location, position – are varied in Portuguese. You met some in Unit 3 which you may like to revise. Here are some more you will find useful when discovering where things are:

<b>em frente (de)</b>	<i>in front (of)</i>	<b>ao lado (de)</b>	<i>next to</i>
<b>detrás/atrás (de)</b>	<i>behind</i>	<b>perto (de)</b>	<i>near (to)</i>
<b>debaixo (de)</b>	<i>under</i>	<b>em cima (de)</b>	<i>on top (of)</i>
<b>dentro (de)</b>	<i>inside</i>	<b>fora (de)</b>	<i>outside</i>
<b>entre</b>	<i>between</i>	<b>contra</b>	<i>against</i>

Don't forget that if you are describing a permanent fixture, e.g. a building, you will use **ser** (*to be*) or **ficar**, but with temporary or moveable items, **estar**. For example:

<b>O mercado é/fica perto do cinema.</b>	<i>The market is near the cinema.</i>
<b>Minha casa é ao lado da praça.</b>	<i>My house is next to the square.</i>
<b>O livro está em cima da mesa.</b>	<i>The book is on top of the table.</i>

---

### Test yourself

<b>pode me levar a ... por favor?</b>	<i>can you take me to ... please?</i>
<b>vou passar uns dias em ...</b>	<i>I'm going to spend a few days in ...</i>
<b>precisa visitar ...</b>	<i>you need to visit...</i>
<b>a que horas parte/chega?</b>	<i>at what time does it depart/arrive?</i>
<b>o próximo trem/ônibus (de luxo)</b>	<i>the next train/coach</i>
<b>queria um bilhete</b>	<i>I'd like a ticket</i>
<b>de ida/de ida e volta</b>	<i>single/return</i>
<b>tem troco para uma nota de ...?</b>	<i>do you have change for a ... note?</i>
<b>... sai de onde?</b>	<i>from where does ... leave?</i>
<b>o que faço para chegar a ...?</b>	<i>how do I get to ...?</i>

## Insight

### Transport in Brazil

Taxis are pretty cheap. You can hail them in the street or wait at a **ponto de taxis**.

**O ônibus** gets very squashed in town centres, with crowds hanging off the back – wherever they can get hold. You get on at the back of many buses and have to go through a turnstyle. It's awkward if you have much luggage, but cheap.

**O ônibus de luxo** is for long-distance travel and inter-urban. Cheap. Some are more comfortable than others. There are frequent stops at roadside eating places, the basic equivalent of motorway stops. Also known as *ônibus-leito*, where your seat expands into a bed.

**O trem** is cheap but very slow. Most longer travel is preferable by coach. Probably the most infamous is the **trem da morte** – the train of death, which crosses the swamplands of the Pantanal into Bolivia.

---

## Practice

- 1 Insert the correct possessive word in these sentences. You may have to think first about the sentence structure in some of them.
  - a Estes são [*my*] \_\_\_\_\_ sapatos [shoes].
  - b Sonia é [*his*] \_\_\_\_\_ amiga. [careful!]
  - c [*our*] \_\_\_\_\_ casa fica perto do cinema.
  - d [*their* f.] \_\_\_\_\_ irmãs são americanas.
  - e Esta é [*your* sing.] \_\_\_\_\_ chave?
- 2 Can you do the following?
  - a Say can you take me to the town centre?
  - b Wish someone a good journey.

- c Ask what time the next coach to Rio departs.
- d Ask if someone has change for a R\$50 note.
- e Ask how one gets to the Miraflores Square.
- f Ask someone if they know a good restaurant here.

3 Fill in your part of the dialogue at the bus station, and practise it by listening to the recording.

<b>You</b>	<i>(Ask what time the next coach to Fortaleza departs.)</i>
<b>Empregado</b>	Parte às vinte e uma e dez.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Say you'd like a return ticket.)</i>
<b>Empregado</b>	Muito bem. São 78 reais.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Ask if he has change for a R\$100 note.)</i>
<b>Empregado</b>	Sim, tenho. Tome.
<b>You</b>	<i>(Ask where the coach leaves from.)</i>
<b>Empregado</b>	Sai do portão número 11B. É aqui em frente.

CD1, TR 10, 02:13

4 Match up the Portuguese statements on the left with the correct English version on the right.

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| a Eu te conheço.            | i They don't hear me.        |
| b Eles não me ouvem.        | ii We buy them.              |
| c Miguel o escreve devagar. | iii The teacher punishes us. |
| d A professora nos castiga. | iv I know you.               |
| e Nós as compramos.         | v Miguel writes it slowly.   |

5 The following dialogue in a taxi has become scrambled. Can you put it in the correct order?

- a Sim, vou passar uma semana em Minas.
- b Aqui estamos.
- c Pode me levar à estação, por favor?
- d Região bonita. Precisa visitar a cidade de Ouro Preto.
- e Quanto é?
- f Posso, sim senhora. Vai viajar?
- g Vou tentar.
- h 17 reais. Obrigado.





---

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the travel information below and answer T/F to these statements.

- 1 Ticket a was issued for travelling by plane.
- 2 With Ticket b you'll be travelling on a bus.
- 3 Ticket c is for a one-way journey.

**a**

Empresa Brasileira de  
Infra-Estrutura  
Aeroportuária

Série E            No. 279853

TARIFA DE EMBARQUE VOO  
DOMÉSTICO 2a  
categoria

Aeroporto: Salvador /  
Data: 23/05/03

**b**



**c**

Empresa Auto Ônibus Silva S/A

Rio ↔ Recife Ida e Volta / Data de emissão: 12/06/03  
Preço : R\$ 56,85

# 10

## Tem um apartamento livre?

Do you have a room free?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to obtain a hotel room**
- **How to make minor complaints**
- **More about Brazilian meals and meal times**

### Dialogue 1

Sylvia approaches the Hotel Florestal in Manaus, Amazon, and enters the reception – a **recepção**.

<b>Rececionista</b>	Boa tarde. Pois não?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Boa tarde. Tem um apartamento livre?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Simples, ou duplo?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Simples por favor. Com banheiro.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Todos os apartamentos têm banheiro. Vamos ver. É para quantos dias?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Para cinco dias, até quinta-feira.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Bom, temos o apartamento 222 livre.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Quanto é por noite?
<b>Rececionista</b>	58 reais, incluindo o café da manhã.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Está bem. Onde fica o apartamento?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Fica no segundo andar, com vista para o rio. Quer preencher esta ficha antes de subir?

CD1, TR 11, 00:09

**um apartamento livre** *a room free*  
**simples/duplo** *single/double*  
**para quantos dias?** *for how many days?*  
**por noite** *per night*  
**incluindo** *including*  
**café da manhã (o)** *breakfast*  
**com vista para o rio** *overlooking the river*  
**preencher** *to fill in*  
**ficha (a)** *form*  
**antes de subir** *before going up*

Once in her room Sylvia studies the hotel information guide (see following page).

**tabela de preços (a)** *price tariff*  
**c/café = com café** *with breakfast*  
**quarto (o)** *room*  
**meia pensão (a)** *half board*  
**pensão complete (a)** *full board*  
**duas camas** *2 beds (twin)*  
**por pessoa** *per person*  
**refeições (as)** *meals*  
**servem-se** *are served*  
**borboleta (a)** *butterfly*  
**a partir das ...** *from ... onwards*  
**cama de casal (a)** *double bed*

### Exercise 1

Can you work out the solutions to the following, based on the hotel opposite?

- a** Mr and Mrs Johnson would like a twin room, with full board for 2 nights. How much would they pay in total?
- b** Are they able to have breakfast served in their room?
- c** If they asked to have dinner at ‘seis e meia da tarde’, would it be available?

# HOTEL FLORESTAL

<b>Tabela de preços:</b>	quarto só	c/café	meia pensão	pensão completa
apartamento simples	R\$40	R\$58	R\$75	R\$95
apartamento duplo (duas camas)	R\$35	R\$53	R\$70	R\$90
apartamento duplo (cama de casal)	R\$32	R\$50	R\$67	R\$87

Preços por pessoa por noite.

## **Refeições** (servem-se no restaurante *Borboleta*)

café da manhã	a partir das 7:30
almoço	das 12:30 até às 14:00
jantar	das 19:00 até às 21:30

## Grammar

### **Antes de ...** *Before ... ing*

To say *before (or after) ...ing something*, in Portuguese you use the prepositions **antes de** *before* or **depois de** *after* plus the infinitive. For example:

<b>antes de subir</b>	<i>before going up</i>
<b>depois de descer</b>	<i>after going down</i>

You can also use other prepositions with infinitives in the same way, such as **em vez de** *instead of*, **sem** *without* and **além de** *as well as*.

### **Servem-se refeições** *Meals are served*

In Unit 2 you met reflexive verbs – verbs where the action was carried out on or by a ‘self’: **eu me levanto** *I get myself up*. You can also use reflexive verbs to convey a neutral verb subject, in the same way the French use ‘on’ (one). **Servem-se refeições** means *meals serve themselves*, i.e. *they are served*. This provides an alternative to saying *we serve* (**servimos**). You may also come across such examples as:

**vende-se** or **se vende** *for sale*

**fala-se** or **se fala** *is spoken*

**compra-se** or **se compra** *is bought*

**faz-se** or **se faz** *is made*

### **Insight**

Keep a look-out for further examples, especially on signs and in adverts. When you are in Brazil, take every opportunity to consider the everyday written language around you; it will help you remember points of grammar you have been studying.

## **Dialogue 2**

Sylvia is on her way to look at the grand Opera House in Manaus. At reception she overhears a conversation.

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Hóspede (guest)</b> | Queria me queixar de algumas coisas de que não estou muito contente.  |
| <b>Rececionista</b>    | Qual é o problema, senhor?  |
| <b>Hóspede</b>         | Em primeiro lugar, o ar-condicionado não está funcionando, e com este calor e tantos mosquitos que temos aqui, não aguento ficar no quarto como está agora. Também a torneira da pia não fecha e a água continua pingando toda a noite. |

<b>Rececionista</b>	Peço mil desculpas. Vou chamar alguém para vir ver o quarto já já. Está bem?
<b>Hóspede</b>	OK, mas também precisa trocar o travesseiro por que está sujo, e dar uma olhada às persianas que não abrem direitinho.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Muito bem, senhor. O senhor quer ir jantar enquanto organizo tudo?

**queixar-se de** *to complain about*  
**contente** *happy*  
**em primeiro lugar** *first of all*  
**ar-condicionado (o)** *air-conditioning*  
**não está funcionando** *isn't working*  
**mosquitos (os)** *mosquitoes*  
**como está agora** *as it is now*  
**torneira (a)** *tap*  
**pia (a)** *basin*  
**não fecha** *doesn't close*  
**continua pingando** *carries on dripping*  
**peço mil desculpas** *I'm very sorry*  
**alguém** *someone*  
**já já** *right away*  
**travesseiro (o)** *pillow*  
**sujo** *dirty*  
**dar uma olhada** *to have a look*  
**persianas (as)** *blinds*  
**direitinho** *properly*  
**enquanto** *whilst*  
**organizo** *I organize*

## Exercise 2

Name three things wrong with the guest's room.

- 1
- 2
- 3

---

## Grammar

### Making complaints

In a country as huge as Brazil, it is unfortunately inevitable that something will go wrong at some point. Look at the following check-list of useful expressions:

o aquecimento <i>heating</i>	}	não funciona/ não está funcionando <i>doesn't work/ isn't working</i>
a luz <i>electricity</i>		
a água <i>water</i>		
o ar-condicionado <i>air conditioning</i>		
o chuveiro <i>shower</i>		
a fechadura <i>lock</i>		
a toalha <i>towel</i>	}	{ sujo <i>dirty</i> partido <i>broken</i> lascado <i>chipped</i>
os copos <i>glasses</i>		
o garfo <i>fork</i>		
a faca <i>knife</i>		
a colher <i>spoon</i>		
o prato <i>plate</i>		

Remember to make adjectives agree with the noun, e.g.

as toalhas estão sujas *the towels are dirty*

The verb 'faltar' (*to be lacking, missing*) is used 'back to front'.  
Falta um garfo – *a fork is missing*, faltam copos *the glasses are missing/there aren't any glasses*

Remember to complain politely! Use **desculpe** to start with, and expressions such as:

pode vir ver	<i>can you come and look</i>
pode ajudar	<i>can you help</i>
é capaz de	<i>are you able to</i>
é possível	<i>is it possible</i>

## Test yourself

tem um apartamento livre?

simples/duplo

com/sem banheiro/café da manhã

para ... dias/pessoas

fica no ... andar

queria me queixar de ...

o/a ... não está funcionando

falta/m ...

pode dar uma olhada/ajudar/vir?

peço mil desculpas

*do you have a room free?*

*single/double*

*with/without bathroom/breakfast*

*for ... days/people*

*it's on the ... floor*

*I'd like to complain about ...*

*the ... isn't working*

*there's ... missing*

*can you have a look/help/come?*

*I'm really sorry*

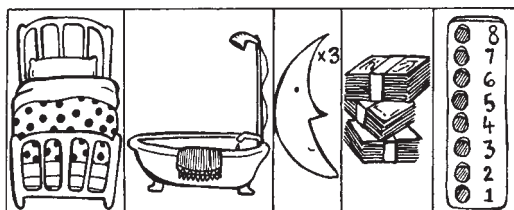
## Insight

**Apartamento** is the term used in Brazil for an *en-suite room*, otherwise **um quarto** (*room only*) is asked for. A **pousada**, unlike in Portugal, is a B&B, although some may be quite pricey. Usually breakfast is included in the price of the room, and certainly worth having – normally a selection of ham, cheese, fruit, cakes and bread rolls. There is a good Youth Hostel service in many parts of Brazil (**os albergues de juventude**), and many motels are also worth considering.

## Practice

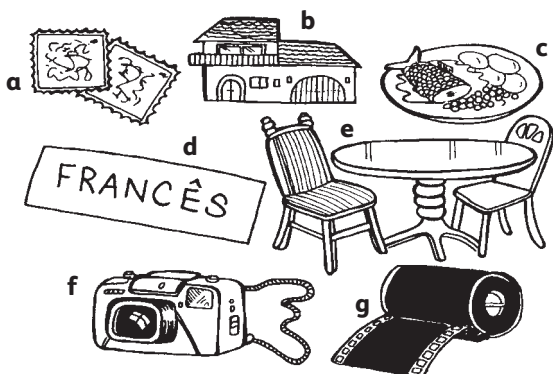
CD1, TR 11, 01:23

- 1 Take part in a dialogue on the recording about booking a room. Follow the pictures below for your prompts.





2 Match up the signs with the pictures.



Se vende

Se fazem

Se compram

Se fala

Se servem

CD1, TR 11, 02:46

3 Listen to someone booking into a hotel and fill in their details on the **ficha** below.

Room type - - - - -

With/without bathroom - - - - -

No. days - - - - -

Departure day - - - - -

Room No. - - - - -

Price per night - - - - -

4 What complaint might you give in each of the following situations? Start with **Desculpe**, ...

a a dirty fork

b air conditioning not working

c dripping tap

- d broken plate
- e spoon missing

5 Choose an appropriate verb from the box to complete the sentences.

- a Antes de \_\_\_\_\_ à cidade, vou ver minha amiga.
- b Vá ao seu quarto sem \_\_\_\_\_ o jantar!
- c Ana vai viajar depois de \_\_\_\_\_ o trabalho.
- d O senhor quer sentar antes de \_\_\_\_\_ o filme?
- e Em vez de \_\_\_\_\_ água, vou tomar um chá.

ir terminar comer ver beber

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Look at the information taken as a room booking at the Hotel Ipanema, and answer the questions which follow it.

### HOTEL IPANEMA INFORMAÇÃO TURÍSTICA

Nome <i>Roberto</i>	Sobrenome <i>Silvini</i>
Endereço <i>Via Romani, 45, Napoli</i>	Nacionalidade <i>Italiano</i>
Idade <i>38 anos</i>	No. telefone <i>5-867 - 268 - 9961</i>
Pagamento <i>Cartão crédito</i>	Número de crianças, com idades / / /
Tipo de alojamento <i>Apartamento c/pensão completa</i>	Quantos quartos? <i>Um apt. duplo – cama de casal</i>
Refeições: <i>Café / jantar</i>	Quantas noites? <i>6</i>
Extra no quarto: <i>TV / geladeira</i>	Data da estadia: <i>Do 5 ao 11 de janeiro</i>

- 1** Where is the client from?
- 2** How is he going to pay the bill?
- 3** How many rooms does he want?
- 4** Apart from a TV, what else does he want in the room?
- 5** What is the client's surname?
- 6** How old is he?
- 7** How many children will be coming?
- 8** Which meals does he want?

# 11

## Que tal esta?

### What about this one?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to further discuss likes and dislikes*
- *How to express preference*
- *How to shop for souvenirs*
- *How to buy snacks*

### Dialogue 1

Before she leaves Amazônia, Sylvia visits a craft shop to buy some souvenirs.

- Sylvia** Bom dia. Estou procurando presentes para minha família. Tem alguma coisa típica do Brasil?
- Vendedora** Temos lembranças muito bonitas aqui – típicas da região, e todas feitas a mão. O artesanato aqui é indígena, feito pelas tribos do Amazonas.
- Sylvia** Quanto custa esta bolsa?
- Vendedora** Esta é de couro e custa 24 reais. Gosta?
- Sylvia** Sim, adoro, mas tem uma menor? É para minha irmã e ela prefere uma bolsa pequena.
- Vendedora** Que tal esta? Também é bonita. Ou tem este chaveiro.
- (Contd)

CD2, TR 1, 00:11

**Sylvia** Prefiro a bolsa. Agora, que tem para homens?  
**Vendedora** Temos cachimbos, carteiras, botas, bengalas ...  
**Sylvia** Bom, meu marido detesta fumar, então não vale a pena levar cachimbo. Acho que ele vai ficar encantado com uma bengala.  
**Vendedora** E para si?  
**Sylvia** Mm, para mim, bem, eu gosto muito de brincos. Tem?  
**Vendedora** Temos estes feitos de plantas e de plumas – uma recordação linda desta magnífica parte do mundo.  
**Sylvia** Tem razão. Então levo os brincos, a bolsa e a bengala. Obrigada.

QUICK VOCAB

**estou procurando** *I'm looking for*  
**presente (o)** *gift*  
**lembranças (as)** *souvenirs*  
**região (a)** *region*  
**feitas a mão** *hand-made*  
**artesanato (o)** *handicrafts*  
**indígena** *indigenous*  
**tribo (a)** *tribe*  
**o Amazonas** *the Amazon*  
**que tal esta?** *what about this one?*  
**chaveiro (o)** *key-ring*  
**para homens** *for men*  
**cachimbo (o)** *pipe*  
**carteiras (as)** *purses/wallets*  
**bengalas (as)** *walking sticks*  
**fumar** *to smoke*  
**não vale a pena** *it's not worth it*  
**encantado** *very happy*  
**brincos (os)** *earrings*  
**feitos de plantas/plumas** *made of plants/feathers*  
**recordação (a)** *reminder*  
**esta magnífica parte** *this magnificent part of*  
**do mundo** *the world*

---

## Grammar

### Likes, dislikes

In Unit 6 you learnt how to use verbs of liking, disliking and preferring, when talking about your favourite leisure activities. In this dialogue you can see how the same verbs are used when referring to objects: **Ela prefere uma bolsa pequena** *she prefers a small bag*. Be careful with the spelling of **odiar to hate: odeio/odeia/odiamos/odeiam**; and don't forget **preferir – prefiro/prefere/preferimos/preferem**.

### Para você *For you*

When using the preposition **para** (*for*) with pronouns, you should use the following:

	<b>mim</b> <i>me</i>	<b>nós</b> <i>us</i>
	<b>ele</b> <i>him/it</i>	<b>eles</b> <i>them</i>
<b>para for</b>	<b>ela</b> <i>her/it</i>	<b>elas</b> <i>them</i>
	<b>si</b> <i>himself/herself/yourself/itself</i>	<b>si</b> <i>themselves/yourselves</i>
	<b>você</b> <i>you</i>	<b>vocês</b> <i>you</i>

**Eu gosto de fazer coisas para eles.**

*I like doing things for them.*

**Elas fazem tudo para si.**

*They do everything for themselves.*

These forms of pronouns are also used with other prepositions. Look at these examples:

**João pensa sempre em mim.**

*John always thinks about me.*

**Ela se esquece de nós.**

*She forgets us.*

## Insight

### **Lembranças do Brasil** *Souvenirs from Brazil*

As you travel around Brazil you will come across varied and exquisite souvenirs. Here are a few suggestions for what to buy:

*gaucho-style tea and  
drinking vessel  
precious stones  
gold  
diamond  
leather goods  
earthenware pottery  
wall hangings  
hammocks*

**chá erva mate (chimarrão) e cuia  
(cambuca)  
pedras preciosas  
ouro  
diamante  
artigos de couro  
cerâmica de barra  
tapeçarias  
redes**

I once brought back a ‘berimbau’ – a type of musical instrument looking rather like a bow and arrow. The airline shrink-wrapped it and stored it in the hold as it was considered dangerous!

### **Souvenir expressions**

Revise shopping expressions, such as:

**posso ver/experimentar  
gosto mais deste/daquele  
tem outro/menor/maior  
tem em + colour  
de que é feito?**

---

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia meets a friend for a quick snack before getting ready to leave for Brasília.

- Sylvia** Oi, Paulo. Tudo bem?  
**Paulo** Tudo, e você?  
**Sylvia** Ótimo. Esta viagem é muito interessante para mim. Amanhã parto para Brasília.  
**Paulo** Vai achar Brasília super-diferente – moderna, a sede do governo.  
**Garçom** Que vão tomar?  
**Sylvia** Para mim um café com leite e um lanche.  
**Garçom** De que? Temos hambúrguer, cheesebúrguer-maionese, coxinhas e empadas.  
**Sylvia** Ai, que difícil! Acho que quero uma empada. Paulo, o que você vai pedir?  
**Paulo** Para mim, um suco de maracujá, uma coxinha, e um sanduíche de queijo.

**esta viagem** *this journey*

**um lanche** *a snack*

**parto para** *I leave for*

**que difícil!** *how difficult!*

**vai achar** *you'll find*

**super-diferente** *really different*

**a sede do governo** *the seat of government*

## Snacks and drinks in Brazilian cafés

### Bebidas *Drinks*

<b>frio/a</b>	<i>cold</i>	<b>quente</b>	<i>hot</i>
<b>guaraná (o)</b>	<i>national soft drink</i>	<b>chá (o)</b>	<i>tea</i>
<b>vitamina (a)</b>	<i>milk shake</i>	<b>café (o)</b>	<i>coffee</i>
<b>leite (o)</b>	<i>milk</i>	<b>média (a)</b>	<i>milky coffee</i>
<b>suco de fruta (o)</b>	<i>fruit juice</i>		
<b>chope (o)</b>	<i>draught lager</i>		
<b>laranjada (a)</b>	<i>orangeade</i>		



## Lanches *Snacks*

<b>bolo (o)</b>	<i>cake</i>
<b>sanduíche (o) de – presunto/queijo</b>	<i>ham/cheese sandwich</i>
<b>torrada com manteiga (a)</b>	<i>toast with butter</i>
<b>coxinha (a)</b>	<i>chicken 'drumstick'</i>
<b>empada (a)</b>	<i>pie</i>
<b>cheesebúrguer/maionese (o)</b>	<i>cheeseburger/mayonnaise</i>

---

## Test yourself

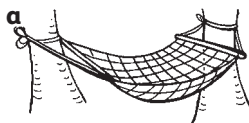
<b>estou procurando presentes para ...</b>	<i>I'm looking for presents for ...</i>
<b>tem alguma coisa típica?</b>	<i>do you have anything typical?</i>
<b>que tal este/esta?</b>	<i>what about this?</i>
<b>que tem para ...?</b>	<i>what do you have for ...?</i>
<b>levo ...</b>	<i>I'll take ...</i>
<b>para mim, para meu irmão</b>	<i>for me, for my brother</i>
<b>o que vai pedir?</b>	<i>what are you going to have?</i>
<b>um sanduíche de queijo/presunto</b>	<i>a cheese/ham sandwich</i>
<b>quero um lanche</b>	<i>I want a snack</i>

---

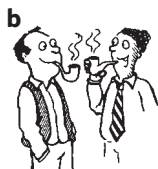
## Practice

- 1** Complete the sentences by using the correct form of a verb of liking/disliking, plus the appropriate name for the souvenir in the picture.

**a** Ela (odiar) a \_\_\_\_\_.



**b** Eu (não gostar) dos \_\_\_\_\_.



- c** Nós (preferir) \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_.



- d** Você (gostar) dos \_\_\_\_\_?



- e** Eles (adorar) os \_\_\_\_\_.



**2** Choose the correct pronouns out of those given.

- a** Este bolo é para **me/mim**.
- b** Joana não gosta **deles/dos**.
- c** Você pensa **nela/na**?
- d** Fazem o trabalho para **se/si**.
- e** O livro é para **você/o**.

**3** Read each person's snack preferences, then choose what each would have.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> Sarah wants a hot drink without milk | 1 cafezinho    2 média               |
| <b>b</b> Tony is vegetarian                   | 1 sanduíche de presunto<br>2 torrada |
| <b>c</b> Sally prefers sweet things           | 1 bolo    2 coxinha    3 empada      |
| <b>d</b> David wants an alcoholic drink       | 1 suco    2 chope    3 chá           |
| <b>e</b> Mary hates soft drinks               | 1 guaraná    2 leite<br>3 laranjada  |

- 4 Take part in a dialogue on the recording, where you are buying souvenirs for your family.

**You** *(Say I'm looking for presents for my family.)*  
**Sra** Temos umas coisas bonitas e típicas do Brasil.  
**You** *(Say do you have a hammock?)*  
**Sra** Temos estas, que são bonitas.  
**You** *(Ask how much it is.)*  
**Sra** Esta custa 156 reais.  
**You** *(Say what do you have for ladies.)*  
**Sra** Para senhoras temos tapeçarias, pedras, artigos de couro ...  
**You** *(Say I'm going to take the hammock, and this wall hanging.)*  
**Sra** Obrigada.

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Mônica is a 'national heroine' in Brazilian cartoon strips. How much of the text below can you understand?

- 1 In how many countries has Mônica already made her presence felt?
- 2 When is she going to be launched elsewhere?
- 3 In how many other countries?
- 4 In the US marketplace, where will Mônica have to be seen to be attending?
- 5 In Brazil, what else is the Sousa Production Company launching?
- 6 What do you think are the words for:  
a little rabbit    b cartoons    c classes

## Mônica vai às aulas

Com o coelhinho na mão, a personagem Mônica ataca outra vez. Presente timidamente em dezessete países, a partir do ano que vem a heroína dos quadrinhos de Maurício de Sousa vai penetrar com força total em quarenta outros, começando pelos Estados Unidos. Para entrar no mercado americano, Mônica terá de frequentar uma escola. Lá, não se admite faltar às aulas nem nas histórias em quadrinhos. No front interno, a Maurício de Sousa Produções lança o guaraná da Mônica e outros refrigerantes.

# 12

## Por que não vamos ao teatro?

### Why don't we go to the theatre?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to plan an evening out*
- *How to get tickets for entertainment*
- *How to make an invitation*
- *More about time*

#### Dialogue 1

Whilst Sylvia is in Brasília she meets up with an old friend, Luciane. They are trying to decide what to do later that day.

CD2, TR 2, 00:08

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>Luciane</b> | Que quer fazer mais tarde?   |
| <b>Sylvia</b>  | Não me importo. Decida você.   |
| <b>Luciane</b> | Que tal o cinema?  |
| <b>Sylvia</b>  | Se quiser. Que filme está passando?  |
| <b>Luciane</b> | Deixe-me ver no jornal. Dê-me aqui. Bom, página 16, aqui está – guia de espetáculos vida noturna. Hmm, no cinema Tivoli está passando 'JFK', no ABC está passando 'Aliens', e no Brasileiro 'Wall Street'. |
| <b>Sylvia</b>  | Ai, Lú, você sabe que não gosto nada destes tipos de filmes.   |

- Luciane** Então, fazer o quê?
- Sylvia** Por que não vamos ao teatro? Veja o que está passando.
- Luciane** Bem, tem uma peça satírica no teatro Marisol – é sobre a política no Brasil de hoje em dia. Parece bem recebida pelo público.
- Sylvia** Ótimo. Vamos lá. A que horas começa?
- Luciane** Há uma sessão matiné às 3.15 da tarde, e a sessão da noite começa às 7.30. Que horas são agora?
- Sylvia** São 2.20. Ainda dá tempo para chegar. Vamos de táxi, é mais rápido. Vamos!

**mais tarde** *later*

**não me importo** *I'm not bothered*

**decida você** *you decide*

**se quiser** *if you like/want*

**filme (o)** *film*

**deixe-me ver** *let me see*

**guia (o)** *guide*

**página (a)** *page*

**não gosto nada de** *I don't like at all*

**fazer o quê?** *do what?*

**veja** *see/look!*

**peça (a)** *play*

**satírica** *satirical*

**sobre** *about*

**política (a)** *politics*

**hoje em dia** *nowadays*

**parece bem recebida** *it seems well received*

**público (o)** *public*

**a que horas começa?** *what time does it start?*

**sessão matiné (a)** *matinee*

**ainda dá tempo** *there's still time*

**rápido** *quick*

**vamos!** *let's go*

## Exercise

Can you answer these questions in Portuguese based on the dialogue?

- a Qual é o filme no cinema ABC? \_\_\_\_\_
  - b Os filmes são brasileiros? \_\_\_\_\_
  - c Que tipo de peça há no teatro Marisol? \_\_\_\_\_
  - d Lú e Sylvia vão à sessão da tarde ou da noite? \_\_\_\_\_
  - e Que tipo de transporte elas vão usar? \_\_\_\_\_
- 

## Grammar

### Dê-me aqui – more object pronouns

In the expression **dê-me** (*give me*), what you are actually saying in Portuguese is *give to me*. In order to say *to me*, *to you*, etc. you need another set of object pronouns, called indirect object pronouns. They are:

**me** *to me*

**lhe\*** *to him/her/it/you*

**nos** *to us*

**lhes** *to them/you*

\***te** (*to you*) is used more frequently than **lhe**, although often incorrectly.

You use these each time the English has the word *to* in front of the pronoun. You have to be on the look-out, though, because often this is omitted in English. Study this sentence:

*Give him the book.*

If we break it down, we have:

verb  
give

indirect object (pronoun)  
TO him

direct object (noun)  
the book

In Portuguese this would then be: **dê-lhe o livro**, or colloquially in Brazil: **lhe dê o livro**.

You will also hear **dê o livro para ele**. This is often the case in colloquial speech. In fact, many Brazilians use the word '**dá**' for '*give*', which is normally the command form for the '**tu-form**' of the verb not actually used much there. Nevertheless, you will not go far without hearing: **me dá ...** (*give me...*).

### Pronouns galore!

So far you have met quite a variety of these types of words, and as many people find these small expressions confusing, let's compare them all in a table to help you recognize and learn them.

<i>subject</i>	<i>direct object</i>	<i>indirect object</i>	<i>reflexive</i>
eu	me	me	me
você			
ele	o, a (+te)	lhe (+te)	se
ela			
nós	nos	nos	nos
vocês			
eles	os, as	lhes	se
elas			

### Changes following verbs

With direct object pronouns in the third person (**o, a, os, as**), certain spelling changes occur after verbs, which help pronunciation. These changes take place in the following situations:

**a** Following verb forms ending in **-r, -s, and -z**

These final letters are omitted, and an **-l** is added to the beginning of the pronoun. In the case of the omission of final **-r**, the following written accents are added to the remaining final vowel of the verb.



-ar verbs:	-á
-er verbs:	-ê
-ir verbs:	-i (no accent)

<b>Vou vender meu carro</b>	<i>I'm going to sell my car</i>
<b>Vou vendê-lo</b>	<i>I'm going to sell it</i>

**b** Following verb forms ending in **-m**, **-ão**, and **-õe** (nasal sounds)

The endings are maintained, but an **n** is added before the pronoun to preserve the nasal sound.

<b>Eles fazem o bolo</b>	<i>They make the cake</i>
<b>Eles fazem-no</b>	<i>They make it</i>

Remember that in standard Portuguese usage, object pronouns *usually* follow the verb. However, Brazilian usage is more fluid, and in the spoken language particularly, you will find the pronouns before the verb in many instances.

**To accent or not to accent?**

It can be confusing to come across similar words with the addition, or absence, of written accents, as in the following. This is what they mean:

- (o) **que(?)** = *that, which, what(?)*
- (o) **quê?** = *what?* (used on its own)
- por quê?** = *why?* used on its own, or at end of sentence
- porque** = *because*
- por que ...?** = *why ...?*

Look at these examples:

**Gosto muito de café. Por quê? Porque é muito saboroso.**  
**O que você vai comprar? Um avião. O quê?**  
**Por que não vai ao cinema? Porque é tarde.**  
**O cinema que eu prefiro é perto de minha casa.**

## Making suggestions

You can use the following expressions:

<b>Que tal ...?</b>	<i>What about ...?</i>
<b>Que tal o teatro?</b>	<i>What about the theatre?</i>
<b>Que tal a gente* ir ao museu?</b>	<i>What about us going to the museum?</i>

\*a gente = colloq. *us*

<b>Por que não vai/vamos ...?</b>	<i>Why don't you/we go ...?</i>
<b>Que prefere fazer?</b>	<i>What do you prefer to do?</i>
<b>Que quer fazer?</b>	<i>What do you want to do?</i>
<b>Vamos ...?</b>	<i>Let's/shall we ...?</i>

Possible replies might include:

<b>ótimo</b>	<i>great</i>	<b>prefiro/preferia</b>	<i>I prefer/would prefer</i>
<b>está bem</b>	<i>OK</i>	<b>quero/queria</b>	<i>I want/would like</i>
<b>OK</b>	<i>OK</i>	<b>boa ideia</b>	<i>good idea</i>
<b>não estou a fim de ...</b>	<i>I don't feel like ...</i>		

## Describing events

Here are some positive and negative adjectives you may want to use to talk about the cinema, theatre, etc.

<b>É um filme</b> <i>film</i>	<b>romântico</b> <i>romantic</i>
<b>uma peça</b> <i>play</i>	<b>satírico</b> <i>satirical</i>
<b>um concerto</b> <i>concert</i>	<b>cômico</b> <i>comical</i>
<b>uma coleção</b> <i>collection</i>	<b>triste</b> <i>sad</i>
<b>uma exposição</b> <i>exhibition</i>	<b>dramático</b> <i>dramatic</i>
<b>um show</b> <i>show</i>	<b>interessante</b> <i>interesting</i>
	<b>chato</b> <i>boring</i>
	<b>fascinante</b> <i>fascinating</i>
	<b>crítico</b> <i>critical</i>

## Starting/finishing times

The rules you learnt for time in Unit 5 apply to the starting and finishing times of events:

<b>A que horas começa?</b>	<i>What time does it begin?</i>
<b>Começa às ...</b>	<i>It begins at ...</i>
<b>A que horas termina?</b>	<i>What time does it finish?</i>
<b>Termina às ...</b>	<i>It finishes at ...</i>
<b>Há um intervalo { das ... às ... de 15 minutos</b>	<i>There is an interval { from ... to ... of 15 minutes</i>

---

## Dialogue 2

After the play, Sylvia and Lû decide on the rest of the evening.

CD2, TR 2, 01:49

- Sylvia** Que boa peça! Foi ótima. Só que não entendi tudo.
- Lû** Às vezes é difícil – você precisa saber tudo sobre os políticos e a corrupção neste país. Mas gostei.
- Sylvia** E agora, Lû. Que fazemos? Voltamos a pé ou apanhamos um táxi?
- Lû** Por que não tomamos um copo ali naquele barzinho, e depois vamos jantar naquele restaurante de que você gosta?
- Sylvia** Mas preciso me preparar para amanhã – vou viajar por Goiânia.
- Lû** Venha, eu te convido, e sou eu quem paga.
- Sylvia** Ai, isso não, a gente divide.
- Lû** Não, insisto. Você é minha convidada aqui e hóspede neste país. Pago eu.
- Sylvia** Está bem. Aceito. E você pode me falar acerca do estado de Goiás.

**foi** *it was*  
**só que** *only/just that*  
**não entendi** *I didn't understand*  
**tudo** *everything*  
**políticos (os)** *politicians*  
**corrupção (a)** *corruption*  
**gostei** *I enjoyed (it)*  
**que fazemos** *what shall we do?*  
**tomamos um copo** *let's have something to drink*  
**barzinho (o)** *small bar*  
**preparar** *to prepare*  
**venha** *come on!*  
**eu te convido** *I'll treat you*  
**sou eu quem pago** *I'll pay (I'm the one who'll pay)*  
**isso não** *no/oh, no*  
**a gente divide** *we'll split it*  
**insisto** *I insist*  
**convidada** *guest (f) (invited)*  
**hóspede (o, a)** *guest*  
**pago eu!** *I'll pay*  
**aceito** *I accept*  
**acerca de** *about*  
**estado (o)** *state*

---

## Grammar

### Talking about the past

In the dialogue you were introduced very briefly to ways of talking about the past in Portuguese.

**foi** *it was*      **não entendi** *I didn't understand*      **gostei** *I liked*

You will learn the full formations and explanations in Unit 15.

## **Barzinho** *Little bar*

One way of making things smaller, cuter, more affectionate in Portuguese is to add **-zinho** (or **-inho**) to the ending of the word in question. Hence:

o bar → o barzinho	<i>little bar</i>
o café → o cafezinho	<i>little coffee</i>
o livro → o livrinho	<i>little book/pamphlet</i>
o gato → o gatinho	<i>kitten</i>
obrigado → obrigadinho	<i>thanks very much</i>

## **Particular means of transport**

When specifying a particular vehicle, e.g. a friend's car, or a timetabled bus/train, etc. you use **em** (**no/na**) and the vehicle, and not **de**. For example:

<b>Vou no carro de José.</b>	<i>I'm going in José's car,</i> <i>lit. in the car of José.</i>
<b>Ele vai no avião da TAM.</b>	<i>He's going on the TAM plane.</i>
<b>Vamos no trem das 2.30.</b>	<i>We're going on the 2.30 train.</i>

---

## Test yourself

<b>que quer fazer mais tarde?</b>	<i>what do you want to do later?</i>
<b>que tal o cinema/o teatro?</b>	<i>how about the cinema/theatre?</i>
<b>não me importo</b>	<i>I don't mind</i>
<b>se quiser</b>	<i>if you like/want</i>
<b>por que não vamos ao museu?</b>	<i>why don't we go to the museum?</i>
<b>ainda dá tempo para ...</b>	<i>there's still time to ...</i>
<b>há um filme/uma peça/um show</b>	<i>there's a film/play/show</i>
<b>eu te convido</b>	<i>it's my turn to pay for you</i> <i>(I invite you)</i>
<b>sou eu quem pago/pago eu</b>	<i>I'll pay</i>
<b>você é meu/minha convidado/a</b>	<i>you're my guest</i>

## Insight

Brazilians love enjoying themselves, and don't need a lot to make them happy. Even a drink in a bar can proceed into a table-patting, match-box shaking accompaniment of a song, and soon the whole place is alive with movement, rhythm and enjoyment. Larger towns and cities are blessed with museums, cinemas, theatres, nightclubs, galleries and plenty of places to eat, drink and soak up the atmosphere. For the more cultured visitor, there are concerts and literary events as well – just look in the local paper or ask at the **Turismo**.

## Insight

If you don't fancy going out (although you'll miss Brazil if you don't), there are always the amazingly dramatic TV soap operas – the **telenovelas**. Brazilians are hooked on them, some watching three, four or five of them daily! And we thought the Aussie soaps were abundant enough!

## Practice

### 1 Can you do the following?

- a Suggest to a friend that you go to the museum.
- b Ask at what time the film starts.
- c Say the concert finishes at 10.30 pm.
- d Say 'What a good exhibition'.
- e Tell John that he is your guest.
- f Say 'Shall we return by bus?'

### 2 Choose the correct pronouns from those given in the box, to fill the gaps.

- a \_\_\_\_\_ levanto às sete horas.
- b Dá- \_\_\_\_\_ o bolo!
- c Não \_\_\_\_\_ importas?

- d \_\_\_\_\_ vai ao mercado.  
 e Vou vendê- \_\_\_\_\_ à minha amiga.

.....  
 ..... me      ele      eu      te      lo      lhe .....  
 .....

🔊 **CD2, TR 2, 03:05**

- 3** Listen to two people discussing how to spend the afternoon, and complete the exercise below by ticking the appropriate boxes, or filling in the missing information:

- |  |                 |                   |
|--|-----------------|-------------------|
| <b>a</b> Marta suggests going to           | <b>i</b> cinema | <b>ii</b> concert |
| <b>b</b> What page is the info. on?        | <b>i</b> 26     | <b>ii</b> 23      |
| <b>c</b> What is Rui's preferred activity? | <b>i</b> museum | <b>ii</b> cinema  |
| <b>d</b> What is on offer there?           | _____           |                   |
| <b>e</b> What time?                        | _____           |                   |
| <b>f</b> How will they get there?          | <b>i</b> bus    | <b>ii</b> walk    |

- 4** Fill in your part of the dialogue, inviting a friend out.

**Friend** E agora. Que fazemos?  
**You** (Say why don't we go and have lunch in that little bar over there?)  
**Friend** Mas preciso me preparar para o trabalho.  
**You** (Say come along, I invite you and I'll pay.)  
**Friend** Isso não.  
**You** (Say I insist – you are my guest.)  
**Friend** Está bem. Aceito.  
**You** (Say let's go.)

- 5** Fill in the gaps with a *preposition* [prep.] (de/a/em) or a *means of transport, location, or time*, according to the instructions. Don't forget the contracted forms **no**, **da**, **à** etc. – see Unit 2.

E.g.      à      cidade      de            ônibus  
 Vou [prep.] [THE TOWN] [prep.]

(a) Sónia vai viajar [prep.]  [prep.] TAM.

(b) Eles vão pegar o  [prep.] 14:00

(c) Vamos [prep.] ? Não, prefiro ir [prep.] 

(d) Quer vir [prep.]  [prep.] meu pai?

---

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Read the three film excerpts that follow to get the gist of each one.

Now answer the following:

- a** Which film is not American?
- b** Which film would you choose if you enjoy police stories?
- c** Which war does film c relate to?
- d** Is film a comedy or tragedy?
- e** How many people are killed in film b?
- f** The adaptation for film c is taken from what source?

### **a** Mulheres à beira de um ataque de nervos

Este é talvez o filme mais popular do mais consagrado cineasta espanhol: Pedro Almodóvar. Premiado em Berlim com os galardões destinados ao melhor realizador e à melhor atriz (Carmen Maura), o filme é, no fundo, uma grande tragédia, cujas situações levam o espectador a rir até às lágrimas.



## **b** Brigada de Homicidis

O detetive Robert Ross tenta incriminar um perigoso traficante de droga. Mas quando está prestes a deslindar o caso, é-lhe entregue o caso do assassínio de uma velha judia, cujo móbil terá o roubo. Por um lado, o assassínio da velha senhora desperta nele as velhas tradições a que nunca ligou. Por outro, o seu colega é morto, o que obriga Ross a dividir-se pelos dois casos.

## Nascido a 4 de julho

c Nascido a 4 de julho de 1946, Ron Kovic oferece-se aos 20 anos como voluntário para o Vietname, desejoso de servir o seu país. Ferido em combate, torna-se paraplégico e herói nacional. Escreve as suas memórias e é esta autobiografia que Oliver Stone (*Platoon*, *Wall Street*, *JFK*) – também combatente no Vietname – adapta, num filme que recebe o Oscar de melhor realizador. Para o papel do protagonista, Stone escolheu, contra a opinião de muitos, Tom Cruise, e o jovem ator é na composição da figura de Kovic.

# 13

## É tudo?

### Is that everything?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to obtain postal services**
- **How to buy groceries**
- **How to deal with car hire, parking and petrol**

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia has bought some postcards (**postais**), and goes to the post office (**correio**) to buy stamps.

- Sylvia** Bom dia. Quanto custa enviar um postal para Inglaterra, por favor?
- Empregada** 2 reais e cinquenta centavos.
- Sylvia** E este pacote? Por via aérea?
- Empregada** Ponha na balança. Agora, pesa um quilo e cem gramas, então custa 7 reais e noventa centavos.
- Sylvia** Bom, então queria seis selos para postais, e quero enviar o pacote também.
- Empregada** São 22 reais e noventa centavos no total.
- Sylvia** Aqui tem uma nota de cinquenta.

(Contd)

CD2, TR 3, 00:08

<b>Empregada</b>	( <i>counts change</i> ) Agora dez centavos dá vinte e três, vinte e quatro, vinte e cinco, trinta, e vinte dá cinquenta.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Obrigada. Onde é a caixa?
<b>Empregada</b>	É ali à direita; ponha no lado esquerdo, onde diz 'estrangeiro'.

**enviar** *to send*  
**postal(o)/postais** *postcard/s*  
**pacote (o)** *parcel*  
**por via aérea** *by air mail*  
**ponha** *put*  
**balança (a)** *scales*

**pesa** *it weighs*  
**quilo (o)** *kilo*  
**gramas (os)** *grammes*  
**no total** *in all*  
**caixa (a)** *post box*  
**estrangeiro (o)** *abroad*

## Dialogue 2

Next Sylvia goes to a local grocery store (**a mercearia** or **minimercado**) to buy some food for her few days away in the countryside.

<b>Dono</b> ( <i>owner</i> )	Bom dia. Pois não?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Bom dia. Queria pão por favor. Tem pãezinhos?
<b>Dono</b>	Aqui. Quantos quer?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Meia dúzia. E um pacote de manteiga.
<b>Dono</b>	Que mais?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Tem presunto?
<b>Dono</b>	Temos este, que é muito bom, ou aquele ( <i>pointing</i> ), que também é saboroso.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Me dê 250 gramas deste aqui, por favor.
<b>Dono</b>	Mais alguma coisa?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim, tem um bom queijo?
<b>Dono</b>	Este queijo é excelente. Quer provar um pedaço deste?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Mmm, que delícia. Me corte meio quilo por favor.
<b>Dono</b>	É tudo?

<b>Sylvia</b>	Só faltam umas garrafas de água, uma de guaraná, que adoro, e estas coisinhas que tenho aqui no carrinho.
<b>Dono</b>	Muito bem. São 36 reais no total. Obrigado e boa viagem.

**pãezinhos (os)** *bread rolls*  
**quantos?** *how many?*  
**meia dúzia** *half a dozen*  
**pacote (o)** *packet*  
**excelente** *excellent*  
**pedaço (o)** *bit*  
**é tudo?** *is that everything?*  
**só faltam** *they're just missing/needed*  
**que mais?** *what else*  
**saboroso** *tasty*  
**deste** *of this*  
**mais alguma coisa?** *anything else?*  
**provar** *to taste, try*  
**que delícia** *how delicious*  
**me corte** *cut (for) me*  
**garrafas (as)** *bottles*  
**coisinhas (as)** *few things/little things*  
**carrinho (o)** *trolley*

### True or false?

Answer **verdadeiro** or **falso** to these statements.

V F

- a** Sylvia quer comprar oito pãezinhos.
- b** O senhor não tem presunto.
- c** Sylvia prova um queijo antes de comprar.
- d** Sylvia compra uma garrafa de cerveja.

---

## Grammar

### Quantities for shopping

#### Weights and measures

1 k	um quilo	1 l	um litro
$\frac{1}{2}$ k	meio quilo	$\frac{1}{2}$ l	meio litro
250 g	250 gramas	250 dl	um quarto de litro
100 g	100 gramas		

#### Other quantities

QUICK VOCAB

um pacote *packet*  
um rolo *roll*  
uma barra *bar*  
uma lata *tin, can*  
uma caixa *box*  
um tubo *tube*  
um frasco *jar*  
um saquinho *little bag*

---

### Insight

*One of this, some of those*

These expressions are often lifesavers when you do not know, or cannot remember, the names of items. You can simply point and say:

um/uma *one*  
uns/umas *some*  
um pouco *a little*

{ deste/desta *of this (m/f)*  
destes/destas *of these*  
daquele/daquela *of that (m/f)*  
daqueles/daqueelas *of those*

And if you don't know whether what you are pointing at is masculine or feminine, say '**um pouco disto**' (*a bit of this*)

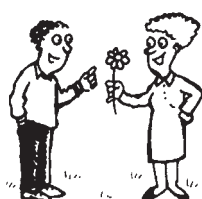
thing), or **200 gramas daquilo** (200 g of that thing). These are more neutral expressions and very handy.

### This here, that there

You have already learnt that **este** (or **esta**) means *this (thing here)*, and **aquele** (or **aquela**), means *that (thing there)*. There are also the words **esse**, **essa**, **esses**, **essas**, which refer to the thing nearest the person with whom you are talking.



**a** esta flor aqui  
*this flower here*



**b** essa flor aí (que  
você tem)  
*that flower (you  
have there)*



**c** aquela flor ali  
*that flower  
over there*

### Quanto? How much?

**Quanto** is used as an adjective in expressions such as **quantos quer?** (e.g. **quantos pãezinhos**). If you were buying bottles, you would be asked **quantas?** (**garrafas**). Used as a question about cost (**quanto é?**, **quanto custa/m?**, **quanto vale?**) it doesn't change form.

### Groceries

The following check list may be useful

**os ovos** eggs

**o queijo** cheese

**o mel** honey

**a farinha** flour

**o molho** sauce

**a manteiga** butter

**os biscoitos** biscuits

**os cereais** cereals

**o azeite** olive oil

**o açúcar** sugar

**a massa** pasta

**o pão** bread

---

## Test yourself

Here is a summary of shopping expressions

<b>Quanto custa?</b>	<i>How much does it cost?</i>
<b>Tem?</b>	<i>Do you have?</i>
<b>Quanto/a/os/as quer?</b>	<i>How much/many do you want?</i>
<b>Que mais?</b>	<i>What else?</i>
<b>Me dê/corte (Dê-me) ...</b>	<i>Give/cut me ...</i>
<b>Mais alguma coisa?</b>	<i>Anything else?</i>
<b>É tudo?</b>	<i>Is that all?</i>
<b>Pois não?</b>	<i>Can I help you?</i>
<b>São ... no total</b>	<i>That's ... in all.</i>
<b>Este, esse, aquele</b>	<i>this, that, that</i>

---

### Insight

Post offices usually open from 9 till 6 during the week, although some close for lunch. Postage is expensive in general, as is faxing. The queues are enough to try the patience of a saint, but in larger branches you can now buy stamps at the philatelic desk. You can recognize the Post Office by the ECT sign – **Empresa de Correios e Telégrafos**.

Shops also open at the above times, with the smaller ones closing for lunch (between 11.30 am and 2 pm). On Saturdays shops tend to close at lunchtimes, apart from the larger shopping centres and supermarkets.

---

---

## Practice

**1** Fill in your part of this dialogue in a post office.

---

<b>You</b>	<i>(Say good afternoon; how much does it cost to send this parcel to Germany, please?)</i>
<b>Empregada</b>	Ponha na balança. Agora, dois quilos, então são 13 reais.

---

<b>You</b>	(Say right, I'd like to send the parcel, and I would also like 10 stamps.)
<b>Empregada</b>	Para a Alemanha também?
<b>You</b>	(Say no, 3 for Spain and 7 for England.)
<b>Empregada</b>	São 35 reais e setenta centavos.
<b>You</b>	(Say thank you; where is the post box?)
<b>Empregada</b>	É ali, à esquerda.

🔊 **CD2, TR 3, 03.52**

- 2** Look at Miguel's shopping list below, and then listen to his conversation at the minimercado. Tick off everything he buys, put a cross by what is not available, and write down in English the extra item he buys.

*1/2 dúzia de ovos*

*açúcar*

*2 pacotes biscoitos*

*frasco de mel*

*presunto –*

*250 gramas*

*1 1/2 litros cerveja*

*8 pãezinhos*

Extra item = \_\_\_\_\_

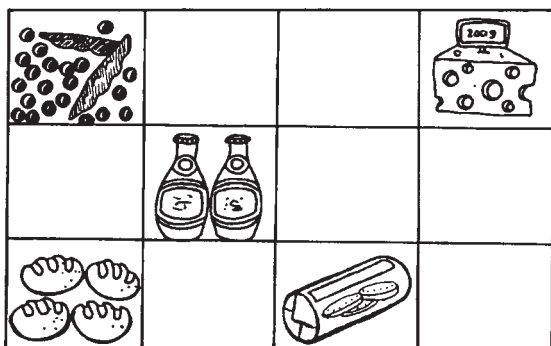
- 3** Fill in the gaps using the appropriate form of *este*, *esse* or *aquele*.
- a** \_\_\_\_\_ postal aqui é para minha amiga.
  - b** Qual manteiga? \_\_\_\_\_ que você tem aí.
  - c** \_\_\_\_\_ senhores ali são italianos.



- d \_\_\_\_\_ pãezinhos aqui são muito bons.  
e \_\_\_\_\_ balas que você tem são deliciosas.

- 4 Grocery bingo. Here is your Bingo card, containing five items of grocery. Listen to the voice on the recording, who will call out various items, and cross off those on your card when you hear them. When you've heard all five, shout Bingo! If you have done so correctly, you should hear the voice congratulate you (parabéns).

CD2, TR 3, 03:50



### Dialogue 3

Sylvia goes to a car-hire agency.

CD2, TR 3, 04:26

- Sylvia** Boa tarde. Eu posso alugar um carro aqui?  
**Empregado** Claro. Tem todos os documentos necessários?  
**Sylvia** Aqui, tome.  
**Empregado** Bom, estão todos em ordem. Agora, é para quantos dias?  
**Sylvia** Para quatro, começando de hoje. Tem algo econômico, mas ao mesmo tempo confortável? Quero ver um pouco da região.

<b>Empregado</b>	Temos um Ford, que custa 53 reais por dia, mais 6 por quilômetro. O preço inclui o seguro.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Ótimo!
<b>Empregado</b>	Agora, é só assinar aqui e aqui, e pronto. Não se esqueça de trazer o carro de volta com o tanque cheio.

**alugar** *to hire, rent*  
**necessários** *necessary*  
**em ordem** *in order*  
**começando** *beginning*  
**econômico** *reasonable*  
**ao mesmo tempo** *at the same time*

**inclui** *includes*  
**seguro (o)** *insurance*  
**não se esqueça** *don't forget*  
**de volta** *back*  
**o tanque** *the tank*  
**cheio** *full (filled)*

QUICK VOCAB

## Dialogue 4

Whilst she is looking at a map, Sylvia is approached by a policeman (um policial).

<b>Policial</b>	Boa tarde. Sabe que é proibido estacionar aqui?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Ah, boa tarde, senhor policial. Ainda bem que está aqui. Parece que estou perdida. O que faço para chegar em Goiânia?
<b>Policial</b>	Goiânia é? Bom, o melhor é virar aqui para a esquerda, tomar aquela estrada, e continuar até ao próximo cruzamento. Depois vai ver os sinais.

**proibido** *prohibited*  
**estacionar** *to park*  
**ainda bem** *thank goodness*  
**o melhor é** *the best thing to do is*

**estrada (a)** *main road*  
**cruzamento (o)** *crossroads*  
**sinais (os)** *traffic signs*  
**perdida** *lost*

CD2, TR 3, 05:30

qv



## Dialogue 5

Later Sylvia stops for petrol.

<b>Sylvia</b>	Boa tarde. Ponha 15 litros por favor.
<b>Empregado</b>	De normal, sem chumbo, gasóleo ou de álcool?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Creio que é sem chumbo. É carro alugado.
<b>Empregado</b>	Ah sim; olhe, aqui diz sem chumbo. Então 15 litros. É tudo?
<b>Sylvia</b>	É possível verificar a água e o óleo para mim?
<b>Empregado</b>	Claro. Um momento só. Está tudo OK.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Obrigada.

### QUICK VOCAB

**normal** *ordinary petrol/gasoline* (also called just **gasolina** or **combustível**)

**gasóleo (o)** *diesel* (also called just 'diesel')

**sem chumbo** *unleaded* (also referred to as '**gasolina comum**')

**álcool (o)** *alcohol/ethanol* (used in Brazil)

**alugado** *hired*

**olhe** *look*

**aqui diz** *here it says*

**verificar** *to check*

**óleo (o)** *oil*

## Grammar

**Por** *for, per, through*

The preposition **por** for is used in expressions with prices, e.g. **reais por dia** *reais per day*. **Por** contracts into **pelo, pela, pelos** and **pelas** when combined with the article, e.g. **vou pela cidade** = *I'm going through (by) the town*.

## Verbs as adjectives

Estou perdida/carro alugado, are examples of verbs used as adjectives, what is called the 'past participle'. This is the part in English such as 'seen, broken, parked, opened', etc. In Portuguese, it is formed in the following way:

	<i>remove infinitive ending</i>	<i>add past participle ending</i>	<i>past participle</i>
<b>falar</b> <i>to speak</i>	<b>-ar</b>	<b>-ado</b>	<b>falado</b> <i>spoken</i>
<b>comer</b> <i>to eat</i>	<b>-er</b>	<b>-ido</b>	<b>comido</b> <i>eaten</i>
<b>partir</b> <i>to depart/ leave/break</i>	<b>-ir</b>	<b>-ido</b>	<b>partido</b> <i>departed/ left/broken</i>

Be careful with irregular verbs. Here are some examples:

**ver** → **visto**

**fazer** → **feito**

**escrever** → **escrito**

**vir** → **vindo**

**abrir** → **aberto**

**pagar** → **pago**

Rules of adjectives then apply. For example:

**A casa é feita de madeira.**

*The house is made of wood.*

**As janelas estão partidas.**

*The windows are broken.*

You will come across past participles again later, in use as part of a past tense in Portuguese. In the meantime, see how many you can spot in adverts and leaflets.

**O melhor é ...** *The best thing to do is ...*

This construction can be used with a variety of adjectives as well as with **melhor** (*best*).

**O importante é ...**

*The important thing is ...*

**O pior é ...**

*The worst thing is ...*

**O triste é ...**

*The sad thing is ...*

## Insight

**Petrol:** sugar cane alcohol (ethanol) is the normal fuel, although diesel is also common. Many roads are terrible, some not more than dirt tracks. Insurance in Brazil may not give you full cover, so do be aware of what you are signing for.

## Practice

- 5 Now see if you can do the following:
- a Ask if you can rent a car here.
  - b Say it's for 8 days, starting today.
  - c Ask what you do to get to Rio.
  - d Say 'I seem to be lost'.
  - e Say 'Put in 12 litres of alcohol, please'.
  - f Ask 'Can you check the water for me?'
- 6 Choose an appropriate past participle for each sentence from the box and make any necessary alterations to it to use it as an adjective.
- a O banco está \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b Todas as janelas estão \_\_\_\_\_.
  - c Os sapatos são \_\_\_\_\_ de couro.
  - d A conta já está \_\_\_\_\_.
  - e A carta está \_\_\_\_\_, senhor Mendes.

aberto    pago    feito    fechado    escrito

## CD2, TR 3, 07:23

- 7 Listen to someone at a petrol station and indicate on the grid the services they require.

Petrol – tick which type	How much?	Check water/oil	Price
Alcohol/Unleaded/Diesel			

**8 Estou perdido ...** Fill in the gaps in this dialogue: replace the English words by Portuguese ones.

**Policial** (*Good morning*) \_\_\_\_\_. É (*prohibited*) \_\_\_\_\_ estacionar aqui nesta (*town square*) \_\_\_\_\_.





**Sra.** Desculpe. Acho que estou (*lost*) \_\_\_\_\_. O que faço para chegar no (*Rio*) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Policial** Bom, o melhor é virar aqui para a (*right*) \_\_\_\_\_, seguir até aos (*signs*) \_\_\_\_\_, e depois tomar a (*2nd*) \_\_\_\_\_ à (*left*) \_\_\_\_\_, e continuar naquela (*main road*) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Can you link up the road signs with their corresponding instructions?

- |          |   |                                       |
|----------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> |    | <b>i</b> área escolar                 |
| <b>b</b> |    | <b>ii</b> aeroporto                   |
| <b>c</b> |   | <b>iii</b> vento lateral              |
| <b>d</b> |  | <b>iv</b> cuidado, animais            |
| <b>e</b> |  | <b>v</b> semáforo à frente            |
| <b>f</b> |  | <b>vi</b> siga em frente              |
| <b>g</b> |  | <b>vii</b> vire à direita             |
| <b>h</b> |  | <b>viii</b> proibido virar à esquerda |

i		ix proibido trânsito de bicicletas
j		x siga em frente ou à esquerda
k		xi velocidade máxima permitida
l		xii pedestre ande pela esquerda

# 14

## Está livre amanhã de tarde?

Are you free tomorrow afternoon?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to make plans for the future*
- *How to make arrangements to meet people*
- *How to deal with a telephone call*
- *The months of the year*

### Dialogue 1

Sylvia overhears two people discussing their weekend plans whilst she is in a café in Campinas.

- Moço** (Boy) Que vai fazer sábado de manhã, Teresa?
- Moça** (Girl) Gostaria de fazer aquela viagem para o Pantanal, já que temos férias neste momento. Quer vir comigo?
- Moço** Eu quero, sim. Ouvi dizer que é uma viagem fantástica, a gente viaja no trem da morte, há de ser super-legal.
- Moça** Não posso esperar – sempre quis ir. Sabe que a gente pode ver animais – há jacaré e tudo. Vamos até a Bolívia e depois voltamos. Leva mais ou menos uma semana para ir e voltar.

(Contd)

CD2, TR 4, 00:09



<b>Moço</b>	Ótimo. Olhe, eu aos sábados, costumo ir ao mercado bem cedo com minha mãe, mas estou livre a partir das oito e meia. Onde nos vamos encontrar?
<b>Moça</b>	Na rodoviária. Temos que ir primeiro a 'Sampa' para apanhar o trem. Eu estarei lá às nove horas. Tá?
<b>Moço</b>	Tá bem. A gente se vê no sábado. Tchau.
<b>Moça</b>	Tchau. E não se esqueça da máquina fotográfica, tá?

**gostaria de** *I would like to*  
**o Pantanal** *swamp area near Bolivia*  
**já que** *seeing as*  
**férias (as)** *holidays*  
**neste momento** *at the moment*  
**ouvi dizer que** *I heard that*  
**a gente = nós** *we*  
**viaja** *travel*  
**há de ser** *it's bound to be/got to be*  
**super-legal** *brilliant, cool*  
**esperar** *to wait*  
**sempre quis ir** *I've always wanted to go*  
**animais (os)** *animals*  
**jacaré (o)** *alligator*  
**leva** *it takes*  
**costumo** *I usually*  
**bem cedo** *really early*  
**a partir das** *from*  
**encontrar** *to meet*  
**temos que ir** *we have to go*  
**'Sampa'** *São Paulo*  
**estarei** *I shall be*  
**tá = está?** *OK*  
**a gente se vê** *we'll see each other*  
**máquina fotográfica (a)** *camera*

## Dialogue 2

Back in her hotel, Sylvia has a call from a university acquaintance.

- Sylvia** Alô?
- Nelson** Alô, Sylvia?
- Sylvia** Sim, quem fala?
- Nelson** Daqui fala Nelson Gusmão, da Unicamp.
- Sylvia** Oi, Nelson, tudo bem?
- Nelson** Eu estou muito bem. E você?
- Sylvia** Tudo azul. Como sabia meu número?
- Nelson** Foi o José que me disse. Então, como vai sua grande 'tour' do Brasil?
- Sylvia** Estou adorando. Estou fazendo boas amizades e desfrutando do tempo para explorar o país.
- Nelson** Bom, você esta livre amanhã de tarde?
- Sylvia** Estou, sim. Tenho que fazer um trabalho até ao meio-dia, mas depois estou livre. Por quê?
- Nelson** Por que não vamos jogar tênis?
- Sylvia** Está bem. A que horas nos encontramos?
- Nelson** Às 2.30. Passo pelo hotel para te pegar. OK?
- Sylvia** OK. Até amanhã.
- Nelson** Tchau. Até amanhã.

**alô** *hello* (on phone)

**daqui fala** *this is* (from here speaks)

**Unicamp** *University in Campinas*

**tudo azul** *everything just fine*

**tempo (o)** *the time*

**explorar** *to explore*

**sabia** *you knew*

**disse** *told/said*

**amizades (as)** *friendships*

**desfrutando** *taking advantage (of)*

**passo** *I'll pass*

**pelo hotel** *by the hotel*

---

## Grammar

### Future plans: *ir* + verbs

The easiest and most common way of talking about future actions is to use the verb **ir** *to go* plus the infinitive of any verb. We do the same in English – *I'm going to visit Italy next summer./We're going to buy a car next week.*

Remind yourself of the formation of **ir** from Unit 3.

<b>Vou visitar minha tia na semana que vem.</b>	<i>I'm going to visit my aunt next week.</i>
<b>Jaime vai comprar um livro amanhã.</b>	<i>James is going to buy a book tomorrow.</i>
<b>Vamos ganhar na loteria no sábado.</b>	<i>We're going to win the lottery on Saturday.</i>

### Future plans: future tense

You can also use the future tense to discuss your future actions, although in practice it is used less in spoken Portuguese. It can be used to emphasize particularly important actions. It is formed in the following way:

To the infinitive of any verb add:	<b>-ei</b>	<b>-emos</b>
	<b>-á</b>	<b>-ão</b>
e.g. <b>comprarei</b>	<i>I shall buy</i>	
<b>falarão</b>	<i>they/you (pl.) will talk</i>	

However, there are three exceptions where the spelling of the verb changes slightly:

fazer = **far** + endings

trazer = **trar** + endings

dizer = **dir** + endings

All other verbs follow the regular pattern – a welcome relief to all learners! In Dialogue 1, the girl said **estarei lá** – *I shall be there*. She could also have said **vou estar lá**, and even just **estou lá**. In colloquial Portuguese, it is common to substitute the present tense for the future.

e.g. **Compro um carro amanhã.** *I'll buy a car tomorrow.*  
**Te vejo no domingo.** *See you on Sunday.*

### Future plans: future times

You will need some time phrases to express your future actions.

<b>amanhã</b>	<i>tomorrow</i>
<b>depois de amanhã</b>	<i>the day after tomorrow</i>
<b>a semana/o mês/o ano que vem</b>	<i>next week/month/year</i>
<b>o/a próximo/a semana, mês, ano</b>	<i>next week/month/year</i>
<b>domingo/no sábado, etc.</b>	<i>Sunday/on Saturday, etc.</i>

### Gostaria *I'd like*

**Gostaria** is an example of a verb in what is termed the 'conditional' form. In English, we use the word *would* in conditionals. If you think that conditional actually means there is a 'condition' imposed on the action, it may help you to understand these structures. For example, *I would buy a car* (but I don't have the money). *If I had the money* is the condition. With the example of the verb *to like*, the condition may be seen in terms of *I would like to ... if that's OK/ if I may*. Conditionals can lead into a complex part of Portuguese verb usage; however the actual formation is as straightforward as that of the future tense.

Infinitive +	<b>-ia</b>	<b>-íamos</b>
	<b>-ia</b>	<b>-iam</b>

(**Fazer** becomes **faria**, **trazer** becomes **traria**, and **dizer** becomes **diria**.)

<b>Eu compraria um carro.</b>	<i>I would buy a car.</i>
<b>Maria falaria com ele.</b>	<i>Maria would speak with him.</i>

Start by using **gostaria**, as it gives you scope to build up confidence using this form of verb. **Gostaria de ver um filme** (*I'd like to see a film*); **você gostaria de visitar o lago?** (*would you like to visit the lake?*).

## Obligation

In Portuguese there are various ways to express obligation or *having to do something*. The most commonly used in the spoken language is **ter que** or **ter de**, as in Sylvia's **tenho que fazer um trabalho ...** In English we would say *I've got to ...* Stronger obligation is expressed through the verb **dever** *to have to/must*.

**Devo terminar este trabalho antes de sair.**

*I must finish this work before going out.*

And in expressions such as:

**Eles devem estar perdidos.**

*They must be lost.*

There is also the use of the verb **haver** *to have*, plus **de**, which conveys even stronger duty, something which is really bound to happen.

**hei de        hemos de**  
**há de        não de**

For example:

**Hei de ganhar na loteria.**  
**Há de ser bom.**

*I've just got to win the lottery.*  
*It's bound to be good.*

## A partir de ... From ...

When you want to say 'from [a certain point] onwards' you use **a partir de** plus a point in time. This can be with the time: **a partir das duas horas** *from 2 o'clock*, or time phrases: **a partir de domingo** *from Sunday*; **a partir do mês que vem** *from next month*, etc.

## The gerund: -ing

In Unit 6 you met this formation: **-ando/-endo/-indo**. Sylvia uses a few examples to talk about what she is currently involved in doing: **Estou adorando ... , fazendo ... , desfrutando ...**

With the verb **estar** in the present tense, this structure conveys an action currently taking place. For example:

**Eles estão falando.**

*They are talking (now).*

**Agora estamos dormindo.**

*Now we are sleeping.*

**Eu estou aprendendo português.**

*I am (currently) learning  
Portuguese.*

### Insight

The **pantanal** is a great swampland area bordering the central-west part of Brazil and into Bolivia. The train crosses the middle of it and offers hardy travellers a marvellous panorama of its wildlife – alligators, birds, insects and big cats abound.

The **trem da morte**, or *train of death*, is the subject of many a traveller's tale – you need to watch your belongings, and be wary of people offering you food or drinks.

### Insight

Telephone calling – in Rio, particularly, the telephone booths are called **orelhão** *big ear*, because of their design. The number 6 in phone numbers is referred to as **meia** (*half*) – from half a dozen.

## Practice

**1** Now see if you can do the following:

- a** Ask Paul what he's going to do on Wednesday afternoon.
- b** Say you'll be there at 10.30.

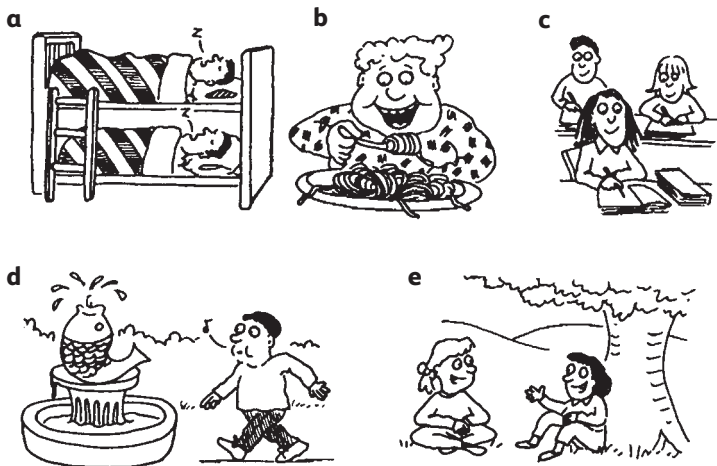
- c Suggest to your friend that you go swimming.
- d Ask someone what time you'll be meeting.
- e Say you're free from 4.15 onwards.
- f Answer the phone and ask who's calling.

🔊 **CD2, TR 4, 02:56**

- 2** Listen to this telephone conversation between two friends and answer the questions below.
- a Who is calling?
  - b From where?
  - c When does he want to see his friend?
  - d What will Paulo be doing?
  - e What does Paulo's friend suggest?
  - f What time will he pick Paulo up?
  - g Where?
- 3** Make sentences by choosing words from each box, and forming the correct part of the future tense. A variety of answers may be correct. You will find samples in the Key.

	<i>Time</i>	<i>Person</i>	<i>Action</i>	<i>End</i>
A	amanhã	Cristina	visitar	um bolo
B	o mês que vem	eles	comprar	na loteria
C	no domingo	eu	escrever	Alemanha
D	o próximo ano	a Sra Lopes	ganhar	uma carta
E	depois de amanhã	nós	fazer	um carro

- 4** Decide what is currently going on in each picture, and write it down, forming the correct parts of *estar* and the gerund.
- a Eles [*estar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - b A Sra [*estar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - c Nós [*estar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - d Eu [*estar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - e Elas [*estar*] \_\_\_\_\_.



### Dialogue 3

After their tennis game, Sylvia and Nelson chat over drinks.

- Nelson** Que outras cidades vai visitar?
- Sylvia** Bom, só me faltam seis semanas aqui, e quero visitar o sul.
- Nelson** Tem que visitar Rio Grande do Sul – a região dos gaúchos e as grandes fazendas. No sul também há bastante indústria.
- Sylvia** Sim, gostaria muito de ver Curitiba e também as cataratas de Iguaçu.
- Nelson** Vai adorar. Nesta época não tem tantos turistas – os meses piores são durante nosso verão – dezembro, janeiro e fevereiro.
- Sylvia** Ótimo. Então sem dúvida visitarei Iguaçu – são as mesmas cataratas que aparecem no filme 'A Missão' acerca dos jesuítas portugueses e suas atividades com os índios aqui.
- Nelson** Bom filme. Então, Sylvia, um brinde para o resto da sua viagem. Tchin tchin, e boa viagem.
- Sylvia** Saúde, e obrigada.



**gaúchos (os)** *cowboys/ranchers*  
**fazendas (as)** *ranches/farms*  
**indústria (a)** *industry*  
**cataratas (as)** *waterfalls*  
**época (a)** *season, time*  
**tantos** *so many*  
**turistas (os)** *tourists*  
**os meses piores** *the worst months*  
**durante** *during*  
**verão (o)** *summer*  
**dezembro** *December*  
**janeiro** *January*  
**fevereiro** *February*  
**sem dúvida** *without doubt*  
**as mesmas** *the same*  
**‘A Missão’** *The Mission*  
**jesuítas (os)** *Jesuits*  
**índios (os)** *Indians*  
**brinde (o)** *a toast*  
**o resto** *the rest*  
**tchin tchin** *cheers*  
**saúde** *cheers*

---

## Grammar

### outro, tanto, mesmo

All of these words change their endings depending on the nouns to which they are referring.

<b>outro</b>	<b>outra</b>	<b>outros</b>	<b>outras</b>	<i>(an) other/s</i>
<b>tanto</b>	<b>tanta</b>	<b>tantos</b>	<b>tantas</b>	<i>so much/many</i>
<b>mesmo</b>	<b>mesma</b>	<b>mesmos</b>	<b>mesmas</b>	<i>same</i>

**Tanto** on its own can also be used with verbs, to give more information about the action, e.g. **ela fala tanto** – *she talks so*

*much*. Mesmo can also mean *self*: Ela mesma vai comprar a casa. She herself is going to buy the house.

### Os meses *The months*

#### 🔊 CD2, TR 4, 05:10

janeiro *January*  
fevereiro *February*  
março *March*  
abril *April*  
maio *May*  
junho *June*  
julho *July*  
agosto *August*  
setembro *September*  
outubro *October*  
novembro *November*  
dezembro *December*

QUICK VOCAB

They are now written throughout the Portuguese-speaking world with a lower-case initial letter.

### As estações do ano *The seasons*

o verão *summer*  
o inverno *winter*  
o outono *autumn*  
o primavera *spring*

QV

### Insight

Remember that Brazil's summer coincides with winter in the northern hemisphere. December to February can be tremendously hot.

## Celebratory expressions

<b>tchin tchin/saúde</b>	<i>cheers</i>
<b>parabéns</b>	<i>congratulations</i>
<b>boa viagem</b>	<i>bon voyage</i>
<b>feliz aniversário</b>	<i>happy birthday</i>
<b>boa sorte</b>	<i>good luck</i>
<b>feliz Natal</b>	<i>Happy Christmas</i>
<b>feliz Ano Novo</b>	<i>Happy New Year</i>
<b>as melhoras</b>	<i>get well</i>
<b>boas férias</b>	<i>have a good holiday</i>
<b>feliz Páscoa</b>	<i>happy Easter</i>

## Test yourself

<b>que vai fazer amanhã?</b>	<i>what are you doing tomorrow?</i>
<b>está livre amanhã/sábado?</b>	<i>are you free tomorrow/Saturday?</i>
<b>gostaria de ver/visitar ...</b>	<i>I'd like to see/visit ...</i>
<b>leva uma hora/um mês</b>	<i>it takes an hour/month</i>
<b>estou livre a partir de ...</b>	<i>I'm free from ...</i>
<b>alô/quem fala?/daqui fala ...</b>	<i>hello/who's speaking?/it's ... here</i>
<b>a que horas nos encontramos?</b>	<i>at what time shall we meet?</i>
<b>estou viajando/trabalhando</b>	<i>I'm travelling/working</i>
<b>saúde/boa viagem</b>	<i>cheers/bon voyage</i>
<b>verão/outono/inverno/primavera</b>	<i>summer/autumn/winter/spring</i>

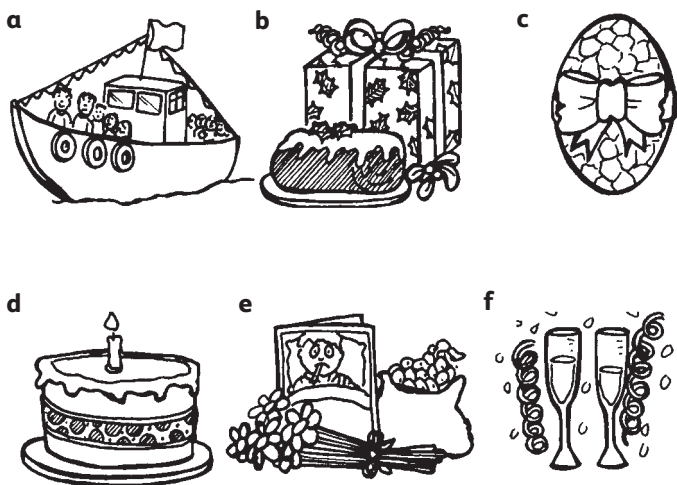
## Practice

- 5** Are these statements, based on Dialogue 3, **verdadeiro** or **falso**?

T F

- a** Sylvia still has 7 weeks left in Brazil.
- b** Rio Grande do Sul is a region of farms and industry.

- c At the moment there are not many tourists about.  
 d The worst months are in the spring.  
 e Sylvia wants to visit a Jesuit Mission.  
 f Nelson toasts the rest of Sylvia's journey.
- 6 Look at the following situations and what people are saying. They have become mixed up. Can you decide which expression belongs with which picture?



- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| i Feliz Páscoa  | ii Feliz Aniversário |
| iii Feliz Natal | iv As Melhoras       |
| v Parabéns      | vi Boa Viagem        |

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Your friend has sent you a cutting from a paper about a place she would like to visit with you. Look at the piece and insert the correct words from the box to fill the gaps. Then answer the questions below.

flores festas Estados Unidos  
novembro ano cores

- 1 What kind of activity is this (music/sport/nature)?
- 2 What can you see there?
- 3 What is new this year?
- 4 When was the event originally set up?

## FLORES

# *Roselândia apresenta festas na primavera*

da Redação

Acontecem até o próximo dia 17 de \_\_\_\_\_, na Roselândia (km 33 da rodovia Raposo Tavares), as \_\_\_\_\_ da Primavera e das Rosas.

Realizados desde 1954, os eventos mostram novidades em rosas, \_\_\_\_\_ e plantas ornamentais provenientes da Europa e dos \_\_\_\_\_ que a Roselândia introduz no Brasil.

Neste \_\_\_\_\_, além dos jardins com novas variedades de rosas, a novidade são as petúnias, com 15 \_\_\_\_\_ diferentes.

Informações pelo tel. (011) 7924-0122. (SC)

# 15

## Como foi a viagem?

### How was the journey?

In this unit you will learn

- **How to talk in the past**
- **How to discuss a visit you have made**
- **How to describe actions**

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia overhears some people talking about their holiday.

- Sr** Então, gostou da viagem? Visitou a catedral?
- Sra** Adorei. A catedral de lá é tão bonita e típica da arquitetura portuguesa. O nordeste é uma mistura interessante do africano com o europeu – a cultura, a música, e a religião.
- Sr** E as pessoas também – pele negra ao lado da branca, olhos pretos, azuis e verdes, cabelos escuros e claros – realmente é o que eles chamam uma miscelânea de culturas.
- Sra** Ficamos uma semana na Bahia, uns dias em Salvador e outros em Fortaleza. Assistimos a uma exibição de capoeira na praia, e falamos com os pescadores com suas jangadas.
- Sr** Comeram a comida de lá?
- Sra** Meu marido provou muitos pratos – vatapá por exemplo, mas eu achei um pouco picante.
- Sr** Então, valeu a pena?
- Sra** Sem dúvida! Esperamos voltar o ano que vem.

CD2, TR 5, 00:09

**gostou?** *did you enjoy?*  
**visitou?** *did you visit?*  
**adorei** *I loved*  
**tão** *so*  
**arquitetura (a)** *architecture*  
**mistura (a)** *mixture*  
**africano** *African*  
**européu** *European*  
**cultura (a)** *culture*  
**religião (a)** *religion*  
**pessoas (as)** *people*  
**pele negra (a)** *dark skin*  
**olhos (os)** *eyes*  
**cabelos (os)** *hair*  
**sem dúvida** *really, without doubt*  
**o que eles chamam** *what they call*  
**ficamos** *we stayed*  
**assistimos a** *we watched*  
**capoeira (a)** *acrobatic dance*  
**falamos** *we spoke*  
**pescadores (os)** *fishermen*  
**jangadas (as)** *Northeast boats*  
**comeram?** *did you (pl.) eat?*  
**comida (a)** *food*  
**provou** *tasted*  
**pratos (os)** *dishes*  
**achei** *I found/thought*  
**picante** *spicy*  
**valeu a pena?** *was it worth it?*  
**esperamos** *we hope*  
**vatapá (o)** *shrimp dish*

## Exercise

Complete these statements with the correct ending:

- 1 The lady visited **a** the north. **b** the south. **c** the northeast.
- 2 In Bahia they stayed **a** a week. **b** a few days. **c** two days.
- 3 She thought the food was **a** too bitter. **b** too spicy. **c** too bland.

---

## Grammar

### The past

You have already met one or two expressions where the verb was in the past. To describe an action which was a one-off event, finished, complete, we use what is called the *simple past* (referred to in Portuguese terms as the preterite). In the dialogue, there were various examples, such as:

**visitou** *you visited*    **ficamos** *we stayed*    **comeram** *you ate*

Let's look at how the simple past of the regular **-ar/-er/-ir** verbs is formed.

	<i>remove infinitive ending</i>	<i>add preterite endings</i>	<i>preterite</i>	
<b>falar</b> <i>to speak</i>	<b>-ar</b>	<b>-ei</b> <b>-amos</b>	<b>falei</b> <b>falamos</b>	
		<b>-ou</b> <b>-aram</b>	<b>falou</b> <b>falaram</b>	
<b>comer</b> <i>to eat</i>	<b>-er</b>	<b>-i</b> <b>-emos</b>	<b>comi</b> <b>comemos</b>	
		<b>-eu</b> <b>-eram</b>	<b>comeu</b> <b>comeram</b>	
<b>partir</b> <i>to depart/ leave/break</i>	<b>-ir</b>	<b>-i</b> <b>-imos</b>	<b>parti</b> <b>partimos</b>	
		<b>-iu</b> <b>-iram</b>	<b>partiu</b> <b>partiram</b>	

Ela falou comigo.

*She spoke with me.*

Comemos muito.

*We ate a lot.*

Partiram às nove horas.

*They (you pl.) left at nine o'clock.*

In Portuguese this tense also translates as *have, has done*. So **falei com ela** can be *I spoke to her*, or *I've spoken to her*.

---

### Insight

Can you spot ending patterns, like you did with the present tense? Notice e.g. **-amos/-emos/-imos**. Note that the Brazilian forms in the *we* person are the same in the present and the

*(Contd)*



past tenses. You may have to deduce what time zone an event took place in by looking carefully at the context, and searching for clues, such as ‘yesterday’, ‘last night’, etc.

### Past questions

Did you notice the man’s questions – **gostou?/visitou?/comeram?** – simply used the past part of the verb, with no equivalent of the English *did*. So the questions actually say *you liked (enjoyed) ...?/you visited ...?/you ate ...?*

### O africano/o europeu

You have learnt that **o + adjective** is used to convey *the ... thing*, e.g. **o importante**. The examples in our dialogue here are very similar:

**o africano** – *that which is African* (the African)

**o europeu** – *that which is European* (the European)

## Dialogue 2

Back in her hotel, Sylvia chats to the receptionist.

<b>Rececionista</b>	Quando voltou de Porto Alegre?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Voltei ontem à noite. Apanhei o ônibus das 17 horas e cheguei aqui às 9:30.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Gostou da visita?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Fiquei encantada. Visitamos uma fazenda, andamos a cavalo e comemos com os gaúchos.
<b>Rececionista</b>	Comeu churrasco?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Sim, e bebemos um chimarrão, que é o chá típico da região.
<b>Rececionista</b>	No inverno daqui, até os estudantes bebem este chá nas aulas por causa do frio daqui.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Que interessante. Bom. Tem algum recado para mim?

<b>Rececionista</b>	Deixe ver. Ah sim, o senhor Ferreira acaba de telefonar. Disse que não é urgente.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Está bem, obrigada.

**ontem à noite** *last night*

**fiquei** *I became/was*

**aulas (as)** *lessons*

**por causa de** *because of*

**recado (o)** *message*

**acaba de** *has just*

**urgente** *urgent*

## Dialogue 3

Sylvia returns José's telephone call and tells him about her journeys to the north and south of Brazil.

- Sylvia** Alô, José?
- José** Alô, Sylvia, tudo bem? Acabo de ligar para aí.
- Sylvia** Eu sei. Me deram o recado agora.
- José** Então, como foi a viagem pelo norte?
- Sylvia** Foi ótima. Vi tantas coisas interessantes.
- José** Foi a Manaus?
- Sylvia** Fui, vi o teatro, dei uma voltinha pelo rio – fiz muitas coisas.
- José** Foi à fazenda aí?
- Sylvia** Sim, acabo de voltar. Os gaúchos são fascinantes – a maneira de viver, a cultura e o Fandango.
- José** Dançou também?
- Sylvia** Não me atrevi – eles dançam tão rapidamente, eu fiquei sentada.
- José** Quando volta para cá?
- Sylvia** Bom, amanhã vou para Curitiba, depois visitarei uma amiga num cafezal. Daqui a duas semanas estarei de volta em São Paulo.
- José** Ligue para mim antes de partir.
- Sylvia** Tchau.

**acabo de ligar** *I've just rung*  
**deram** *they gave*  
**vi** *I saw*  
**fui** *I went*  
**dei uma voltinha** *I made a little trip*  
**maneira (a)** *way*  
**viver** *to live/living*  
**Fandango (o)** *Fandango dance*  
**dançou?** *did you dance?*  
**não me atrevi** *I didn't dare*  
**dançam tão rapidamente** *they dance so quickly*  
**sentada** *sat down/seated*  
**cafezal (o)** *coffee plantation*  
**ligue para mim** *ring me*

---

## Grammar

### Past tense: awkward spellings

Some verbs alter their spellings in the past tense, to maintain certain sounds (hard or soft letters). In the dialogues you had: **cheguei** from **chegar**. Other similar examples are:

<b>jogar</b> – <b>joguei</b>	<b>ficar</b> – <b>fiquei</b>
<b>pagar</b> – <b>paguei</b>	<b>explicar</b> – <b>expliquei</b>
	<b>tocar</b> – <b>toquei</b> <i>I played/touched</i>
	<b>indicar</b> – <b>indiquei</b>

These changes happen in the first person singular only.

Other verbs also make changes in their spelling. Try to learn them as you come across them, and check in a grammar book for the patterns to learn.

## Irregular preterite tense verbs

<i>dar</i>	<i>dizer</i>	<i>fazer</i>	<i>estar</i>	<i>ir</i>	<i>poder</i>	<i>pôr</i>
dei	disse	fiz	estive	fui	pude	pus
deu	disse	fez	esteve	foi	pôde	pôs
demos	dissemos	fizemos	estivemos	fomos	pudemos	pusemos
deram	disseram	fizeram	estiveram	foram	puderam	puseram

<i>saber</i>	<i>sair</i>	<i>ser</i>	<i>ter</i>	<i>trazer</i>	<i>ver</i>	<i>vir</i>
soube	saí	fui	tive	trouxe	vi	vim
soube	saiu	foi	teve	trouxe	viu	veio
soubemos	saímos	fomos	tivemos	trouxemos	vimos	viemos
souberam	saíram	foram	tiveram	trouxeram	viram	vieram

### **Acabar de** *To have just done*

This handy expression is easy to learn, and very useful. You use the present tense of the verb **acabar** (*to finish*), plus **de** plus a verb in the infinitive. For example:

**Sr Ferreira acaba de telefonar.**

*Mr Ferreira has just telephoned.*

**Eu acabo de chegar.**

*I've just arrived.*

### **Aí** *There (where you are)*

It is slightly confusing knowing when to use the various words for *here* and *there*.

**aqui, cá** *here*

**aí** *there*

**ali, lá** *there*

(where I am/we are)

(where you are)

(where neither of us are)

These also correspond to the demonstratives you learnt in Unit 13:

**este** *this here*

**esse** *that near you*

**aquele** *that over there*

So if you are talking to someone on the phone, you must use **aí** if you want to say e.g. *is it warm there?* – **está quente aí?** If you say **está quente lá?**, you are referring to somewhere distant from your listener.

### **Slow, slow, quick, quick, slow**

Adverbs give us more information about a verb. They answer the question *how?* For example:

*They dance. How do they dance? Quickly.*

In English many adverbs end in *-ly*.

**Eles dançam. Como dançam? Rapidamente.**

In Portuguese many adverbs end in **-mente**.

To form an adverb, take the feminine form of an adjective and add **-mente**. If there is no separate feminine form, add **-mente** to the standard form. For example:

rápido → rápida → rapidamente  
fácil → facilmente

There are some irregular adverbs, including:

<b>mal</b> <i>badly</i>	<b>bem</b> <i>well</i>	<b>devagar</b> <i>slowly</i>	<b>cedo</b> <i>early</i>
-------------------------	------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------

---

Test yourself

<b>gostou de ...?</b>	<i>did you like (enjoy) ...?</i>
<b>visitou a catedral/a praia?</b>	<i>did you visit the cathedral/beach?</i>
<b>como foi a viagem?</b>	<i>how was the trip?</i>
<b>foi ótimo/maravilhoso/péssimo</b>	<i>it was great/brilliant/awful</i>
<b>voltei/apanhei/comi</b>	<i>I returned/caught/ate</i>
<b>tem algum recado para mim?</b>	<i>do you have any messages for me?</i>
<b>... acaba de telefonar/ligar</b>	<i>... has just phoned</i>

**daqui a duas semanas  
falam rapidamente  
ligue para mim**

*in two weeks' time  
they speak quickly  
give me a ring/call*

---

## Practice

- 1 Can you do the following?
  - a Ask your friend if she visited the museum.
  - b Say 'We stayed two weeks in Italy.'
  - c Ask José and Sônia when they returned from New York.
  - d Ask the receptionist if he has a message for you.
  - e Say 'I've just arrived in the hotel.'
  - f Say 'The Italians speak so quickly.'
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the past tense of the verb in brackets.
  - a Ontem eu [comer] muito.
  - b No ano passado eles [comprar] uma casa.
  - c Nós [partir] à meia-noite.
  - d Vocês [gostar] da festa?
  - e Marcelo [escrever] um postal para sua mãe.
- 3 Choose the correct verb in each sentence.
  - a Ela viu/veio João no mercado.
  - b Eu fui/fiz um belo jantar.
  - c Nós pudemos/pusemos os pratos na mesa.
  - d Eles foram/fizeram ao cinema.
  - e Você trouxe/teve boa sorte.
- 4 Complete your part of the dialogue about a visit.

**Ricardo** Quando voltou do Rio?

**You** (Say I returned yesterday afternoon. I arrived here at 3.25.)

**Ricardo** Gostou da visita?

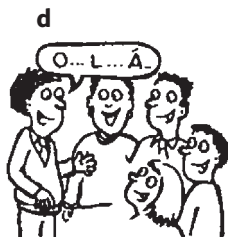
(Contd)

- You** (Say yes, a lot. I walked on Copacabana beach, visited Sugar Loaf Mountain – Pão de Açúcar – and I saw the shanty towns – **as favelas**.)
- Ricardo** Gostou da comida também?
- You** (Say yes, I ate **feijoada** and tried the firewater and lime drink.)

**5** Form the correct past tense and choose an adverb from the box to go with the pictures overleaf.

rapidamente      devagar      bem      cedo      mal

- a** Eles [*lavar-se*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- b** Ela [*correr*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- c** Elas [*cantar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- d** Nós [*falar*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- e** Eu [*tocar piano*] \_\_\_\_\_.



**6** Listen to the dialogue, and fill in the gaps with the words you hear.

- José** Então, como foi a viagem para \_\_\_\_\_?
- Sylvia** Foi ótima. Vi tantas coisas interessantes.
- José** Foi a Londres?
- Sylvia** Fui. Fui ao \_\_\_\_\_, vi o Big Ben, \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ – fiz muitas coisas.
- José** Foi à \_\_\_\_\_ também?
- Sylvia** Sim, acabo de voltar. Os \_\_\_\_\_ são \_\_\_\_\_ – a maneira de viver, a cultura e a \_\_\_\_\_.
- José** Dançou também?
- Sylvia** Não me atrevi – eles dançam tão rapidamente, eu fiquei sentada.
- José** Quando volta para cá?
- Sylvia** Bom, amanhã vou para \_\_\_\_\_, depois visitarei uma amiga. Daqui a \_\_\_\_\_ estarei de volta em \_\_\_\_\_.
- José** Ligue para mim antes de partir. Tchau.
- Sylvia** Tchau.

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Read Teresa's letter and see if you can answer the questions on it.

*Minas, 10 de julho de 20 ..*

*Oi, Cecília, tudo bem?*

*Acabo de voltar das férias que passei nos Estados Unidos. Foi super-legal. Fiquei com meus tios, que moram na Califórnia. O tempo estava super-quente e gostei imensamente.*

*Fomos visitar muitos lugares interessantes, e vi as casas enormes dos atores de Hollywood. Passei em frente da casa de Michael Jackson – parece um castelo! Um dia viajamos até Disneyworld, onde passamos*



*muitas horas divertindo-nos. Nunca vi tantas pessoas na vida! Provei a comida de lá – é tudo comida-rápida, tipo hambúrguer e batatas, não é nada saudável. Comprei uma recordação para ti, acho que vai adorar.*

*Ouvi muita música americana, e na última noite fui a uma discoteca, que legal! A única coisa que realmente detestei foi a falta de guaraná!*

*Eu te digo mais no sábado, ligue para mim antes de vir,*

*tchau,*

*Teresa*

- 1** Onde foi de férias?
- 2** Como estava o tempo?
- 3** Viu a casa de quem?
- 4** Que pensa da comida?
- 5** Onde foi na última noite?
- 6** Que detestou mais?
- 7** Quando vai ver Cecília?

# 16

## Quanto custaram?

### How much did they cost?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to talk about what you have bought*
- *How to identify your own property*
- *More about the past*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia listens to some people discussing what they have just bought.

- Carlos** Que quadros mais lindos! Onde os comprou?
- Isabel** Comprei-os numa lojinha no fim daquela rua ali. A senhora foi super-simpática comigo. Ela me deu um desconto porque comprei dois. Gosta, Paulo?
- Paulo** Gosto. São paisagens típicas do sul. Quanto custaram?
- Isabel** Não muito. Só 35 reais cada. Uma pechincha, não acham?
- Carlos** Realmente!
- Isabel** E você, Carlos, comprou alguma coisa?
- Carlos** Nós fomos até à feira 'hippy'. Nunca vi tantas coisas bonitas. Que difícil escolher!
- Isabel** E daí – que decidiu?
- Carlos** Vi estas pedras preciosas, que adorei, e depois compramos esta caixinha de madeira.

(Contd)

CD2, TR 6, 09:09

- Isabel** Que bonitinha! Quanto custou? Foi cara?  
**Paulo** Não, só 13 reais.  
**Isabel** Puxa! Eu preciso ir lá já. Onde é que fica esta feira?

QUICK VOCAB

**que quadros mais lindos!** *what beautiful pictures!*

**lojinha (a)** *small shop*

**no fim** *at the end*

**simpática** *kind/nice*

**paisagens (as)** *landscapes*

**quanto custaram?** *how much did they cost?*

**cada** *each (one)*

**pechincha (a)** *a bargain*

**feira 'hippy' (a)** *hippy/craft fair*

**nunca vi** *I've never seen*

**escolher** *to choose*

**e daí?** *and so?*

**que decidiu?** *what did you decide?*

**caixinha (a)** *small box*

**foi cara?** *was it expensive?*

**puxa!** *crikey/wow!*

## Exercise

Can you answer the following in Portuguese?

- a** Que comprou Isabel? \_\_\_\_\_  
**b** Onde foram os dois senhores? \_\_\_\_\_  
**c** O que Carlos adorou? \_\_\_\_\_

## Grammar

### Exclamations

It's nice to be able to inject exclamations into your dialogues, where relevant, as this makes your Portuguese much more

authentic. Portuguese is a very expressive language, and the Brazilians especially love using it in a vibrant and sometimes vociferous way!

These few expressions will suffice for now to get you started:

**Que + noun + adjective:** **Que vestido lindo!** *What a nice dress!*  
And, using **mais**: **Que vestido mais lindo!** *What a gorgeous dress!*  
(lit. *what dress most lovely*)

<b>Que coisa mais linda!</b>	<i>What a lovely/gorgeous thing – isn't it gorgeous! (very common)</i>
<b>Que legal!</b>	<i>Cool/wicked/brilliant!</i>
<b>Ótimo!</b>	<i>Great/cool/wicked/fantastic</i>
<b>Puxa!/Puxa vida!</b>	<i>Gosh!/wow!</i>
<b>Nossa!/Nossa Senhora</b>	<i>'Our Lady'/crikey/good God</i>
<b>E daí?</b>	<i>And so/And then/And?/So what?</i>
<b>Opal!/ Oba!</b>	<i>Whay-hey/yo/ wow/hey</i>
<b>Que bagunça!</b>	<i>What a mess!</i>

## Insight

**Cada** is a handy word meaning *each* or *every*. It never changes form, so you could have:

**cada semana = todas as semanas** *every week*

**cada dia = todos os dias** *every day*

**cada um/uma custou** *each one cost*

## Dialogue 2

A lady approaches the table.

**Márcia** Desculpem, mas acho que a senhora pegou meus óculos de sol. Deixei-os no balcão daquela loja de artesanato ali em cima há meia hora.

(Contd)

<b>Regina</b>	O quê? Acho que a senhora está enganada. Estes óculos são meus.
<b>Márcia</b>	Mas são óculos especiais porque não vejo muito bem. Olhe, aqui tem a marca Medioc.
<b>Regina</b>	Onde? Ah, sim agora que eu vejo – tem razão. Peço desculpa. Foi sem querer. Então, onde estão os meus?
<b>Ricardo</b>	Aqui, na sua cesta. Que bagunceira!
<b>Regina</b>	Tem toda razão – Desculpe tá?
<b>Márcia</b>	Não importa. Bom dia.

QUICK VOCAB

**desculpem** *excuse me (to more than one person)*

**pegou** *you took*

**balcão (o)** *counter*

**há meia hora** *half an hour ago*

**enganada** *mistaken*

**são meus** *they're mine*

**especiais** *special*

**marca (a)** *make, brand*

**foi sem querer** *I didn't mean to*

**cesta (a)** *basket*

**que bagunceira!** *what a mess-pot!*

## Grammar

### Há + time

You can use **há** + a time phrase to mean *ago*, e.g.

**há meia hora**

*half an hour ago*

**há duas semanas**

*two weeks ago*

**há muito tempo**

*a long time ago*

## Identifying your belongings

In previous units you have practised the possessive adjectives *my, your, his, our*, etc. Remind yourself of them if you cannot remember them. To identify or claim your property, or that of someone else, you use the same set of possessive words plus the verb *ser*:

**estes óculos são meus**

*these glasses are mine*

**esta casa é nossa**

*this house is ours*

You can answer the question **de quem é ...?** *Whose is ...?*, simply by saying:

é } são }	{ meu/sua/nossos, etc. de Maria dele/dela, etc.
--------------	---

## Insight

Many towns in Brazil have a weekly crafts fair, often referred to as the **feira hippy**. Here you can find a variety of hand-made products, leather goods, jewellery, the beautiful semi-precious and precious stones for which Brazil is renowned, pictures – watercolour (**aquarela**) and oil (**óleo**) – and wax items (**de cera**). Also, there are usually stalls selling food: often you will find **baianas** – the typical women from Bahia (**o nordeste**), dressed in flouncy white clothes – selling the kind of spicy food you would eat in Bahia. The **feira hippy** is a great place to buy presents, and a wonderful place to spend some time drifting around.

## Test yourself

**que ... mais lindo(s)!**

*what beautiful ...!*

**onde comprou?**

*where did you buy (them/it)?*

**quanto custou/custaram?**

*how much did it/they cost?*

que difícil escolher!	<i>how difficult it is to choose!</i>
puxa!/que legal!	<i>crikey!/cool!</i>
acho que está enganado/a	<i>I think you're mistaken</i>
tem razão	<i>you're right</i>
foi sem querer	<i>it wasn't on purpose</i>
há uma hora/algum tempo	<i>an hour/some time ago</i>
é meu/minha, são meus/minhas	<i>it's/they're mine</i>

## Practice

- Replace **cada** with an appropriate form of **todo** (o/a/os/as), and change the verb forms where this becomes necessary.
  - Ela vai ao mercado [cada semana] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Nós gostamos de viajar [cada ano] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - [cada um dos] \_\_\_\_\_ livros (custa) \_\_\_\_\_ R\$10.
  - Maria trabalha muito [cada dia] \_\_\_\_\_.
  - [cada pessoa] \_\_\_\_\_ (ganha) \_\_\_\_\_ um presente.
  - Gosto de [cada mês] \_\_\_\_\_ do ano.
- Fill in your part of this dialogue about an item you have bought.

<b>Marco</b>	Que vestido mais lindo. Onde o comprou?
<b>You</b>	(Say I bought it at the hippy-fair in the square.)
<b>Marco</b>	Quanto custou?
<b>You</b>	(Say not a lot. Only 42 reais. Do you like it?)
<b>Marco</b>	Gosto. Foi uma pechincha.
<b>You</b>	(Ask him, 'did you buy anything?')
<b>Marco</b>	Comprei este livro numa pequena livraria.
<b>You</b>	(Say what a most interesting book.)

- Complete the sentences with demonstratives (**este** etc.) and possessives according to the pictures and instructions.

**a**



Este \_\_\_\_\_ é \_\_\_\_\_. [*ours*]

**b**



\_\_\_\_\_ são \_\_\_\_\_. [*mine*]

**c**



\_\_\_\_\_ é \_\_\_\_\_. [*of José*]

**d**



\_\_\_\_\_ é \_\_\_\_\_. [*yours, of você*]

**e**



\_\_\_\_\_ são \_\_\_\_\_. [*theirs, of eles*]



- 4 Listen to four people talking about when they did various activities, and fill in the table below.

CD2, TR 6, 02:21

Speaker	Did what?	How long ago?
1		
2		
3		
4		

## Testing yourself – do you understand?

Read the following dialogue and/or listen to it on the recording, then answer the questions on it.

CD2, TR 6, 02:54

- Sra** Desculpe, mas acho que o senhor pegou meu guarda-chuva. Deixei-o no restaurante Mineiro na praça há vinte minutos.
- Sr** O quê? Acho que a senhora está enganada. Este guarda-chuva é meu.
- Sra** Mas é um guarda-chuva especial. Olhe, aqui tem o nome da minha companhia – Empresa Tecnical Limitada.
- Sr** Onde? Ah, sim, agora que eu vejo – tem razão. Peço desculpa. Foi sem querer. Então, onde está o meu?
- Sra** Ali, ao lado da porta daquela loja.
- Sr** Você tem toda razão – Desculpe tá?
- Sra** Não importa. Bom dia.

- 1 What has he picked up by mistake?
- 2 Where was it left?
- 3 When?
- 4 How is it recognized?
- 5 Where is the other one?

# 17

## Era tudo tão diferente

### It was all so different

In this unit you will learn

- *How to talk about something you saw earlier*
- *How to identify a stranger*
- *How to recall how a place used to be*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia pops back to a shop to buy a skirt she had seen in the window, but finds the display has changed.

- Empregada** Bom dia, pois não?
- Sylvia** Havia uma saia na vitrine de que gostei muito, mas já não está mais lá.
- Empregada** Como era a saia?
- Sylvia** Era azul com flores pequenas.
- Empregada** E onde estava exatamente?
- Sylvia** Estava à esquerda da vitrine, bem na frente.
- Empregada** E era de algodão ou de lã?
- Sylvia** De algodão. Era muito bonita. Acho que custava 56 reais.
- Empregada** Ah, sim, agora estou me lembrando. Só tinha aquela e mais duas daquele modelo, e vendemos as três hoje de manhã.

(Contd)

CD2, TR 7 01:10

<b>Sylvia</b>	Ai, que pena!
<b>Empregada</b>	Quer ver as outras saias que temos?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Não, obrigada. Só queria aquela.
<b>Empregada</b>	Está bem. Talvez haja mais na semana que vem.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Está bem.

QUICK VOCAB

**havia** *there was*

**vitruine (a)** *shop window*

**já não está mais lá** *it's no longer there*

**era** *it was*

**flores (as)** *flowers*

**estava** *it was*

**bem na frente** *right in front*

**custava** *it cost*

**estou me lembrando**

*I'm remembering*

**tinha** *there was*

**modelo (o)** *style*

**vendemos** *we sold*

**que pena!** *what a pity*

**queria** *I wanted*

**talvez haja** *perhaps there will be*

## Grammar

**Há ... havia** *There is/are ... there was/were ...*

**Havia** is the past equivalent of **há**. Remember you can use **há** to mean *there is/are*. Therefore, **havia** can mean *there was/were*. You may also come across the word **houve**, also meaning *there was/were*, but used to describe one-off happenings, such as:

**houve um acidente**

*there was an accident*

**houve um barulho enorme**

*there was a huge noise*

**havia muitas pessoas na rua**

*there were many people in the street*

Brazilians also use parts of **ter** for the same purpose, e.g. **teve um acidente/teve um barulho/tinha muitas pessoas**.

## The past, part 2

In Unit 15 you learnt how to use the simple past (preterite) to describe actions in the past which had been completed. In the

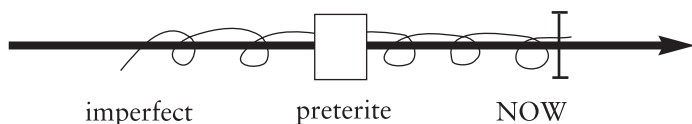
dialogue here you are introduced to another past tense, called the *imperfect*. Try to remember it as *imperfect* because usually there is no perfect ending to it – it's more open-ended than the previous past tense. It describes an action which was continuous in the past, going on for some time. Look at the examples from the dialogue:

Como era? (from ser)	<i>What was it like? (all the time)</i>
Onde estava? (estar)	<i>Where was it? (all the time it was in the window)</i>
Custava	<i>It cost (all the time it had a price)</i>
Só queria esta	<i>I only wanted this one (all the time)</i>

Compare these with verbs in the simple past:

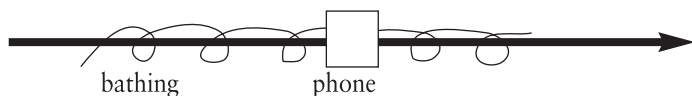
Como foi o filme?	<i>What was the film like? (as a whole)</i>
Ele me custou	<i>It cost me (one-off payment)</i>

It may help to look at the following 'time-line'.



The imperfect is a continuous line in the past, with often no clear beginning or ending (this can continue right up to the present time – *I wanted it and I still do*). The preterite is safely enclosed in a solid, complete box – it's finished. Often the preterite will interrupt an imperfect one, such as:

<i>I was having a bath</i>	<b>WHEN</b>	<i>the phone rang.</i>
(continuous)	(sudden point)	(preterite)



## Formation

	remove infinitive ending	add imperfect endings	imperfect
<b>falar</b> <i>to speak</i>	<b>-ar</b>	<b>-ava -ávamos</b> <b>-ava -avam</b>	<b>falava falávamos</b> <b>falava falavam</b>
<b>comer</b> <i>to eat</i>	<b>-er</b>	<b>-ia -íamos</b> <b>-ia -iam</b>	<b>comia comíamos</b> <b>comia comiam</b>
<b>partir</b> <i>to depart/ leave/break</i>	<b>-ir</b>	<b>-ia -íamos</b> <b>-ia -iam</b>	<b>partia partiíamos</b> <b>partia partiam</b>

e.g. **Ela falava comigo.** *She was speaking to me.*

You will also come across the common construction **ela estava falando ...** See next unit.

Watch out for these irregular verbs:

<b>pôr</b> <i>to put</i>	<b>punha, punha, púnhamos, punham</b>
<b>ser</b> <i>to be</i>	<b>era, era, éramos, eram</b>
<b>ter</b> <i>to have</i>	<b>tinha, tinha, tínhamos, tinham</b>
<b>vir</b> <i>to come</i>	<b>vinha, vinha, vínhamos, vinham</b>

## Insight

When you have got an idea about using the two past tenses you have learnt, try to spot them in the written language: children's books are a good source of material for this.

## Dialogue 2

Sylvia has had a visitor at her hotel.

<b>Rececionista</b>	Senhora Peters, havia um senhor aqui que a procurava.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Um senhor? Como era?

<b>Rececionista</b>	Era bastante alto, tinha cabelo preto, e um bigode, e estava vestido de terno cinzento.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Como ele se chamava?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Não sei. Não disse o nome.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Mas o que ele queria?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Também não sei. Só disse que voltava mais tarde.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Ele tinha que idade?
<b>Rececionista</b>	Bom, provavelmente 50 e tantos anos.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Ah, já sei quem era. É o pai duma amiga minha que tem um cafezal aqui. Vou ficar uns dias com a família dela. Bom, vou subir.

**procurava** *was looking for*  
**como era?** *what was he like?*

**bastante** *quite*

**alto** *tall*

**bigode (o)** *moustache*

**vestido** *dressed*

**terno (o)** *suit*

**como ele se chamava?** *What was he called?*

**voltava** *he was returning/would return*

**idade (a)** *age*

**provavelmente** *probably*

**50 e tantos anos** *50-odd*

**pai (o)** *father*

**uma amiga minha** *a friend of mine*

**subir** *to go up (stairs)*

## Grammar

### People descriptions

Notice which verbs were used in the descriptions.

**era** from **ser** – for permanent characteristics

**tinha** from **ter** – possession, hair/eyes/beards, etc., age

estava from **estar** – temporary characteristics/states, what they are wearing

If you want to describe people in detail, you will need:

*height* alto *tall* médio *medium* baixo *small, short*  
*build* grande *large* gordo *fat* forte *strong* pequeno *small*  
magro *thin*  
*eyes* os olhos + colour  
*hair* o cabelo + colour comprido *long* curto *short*  
liso *straight*  
*extras* bigode *moustache* barba *beard* óculos *glasses* careca *bald*  
*clothes* revise Unit 7

**Uma amiga minha** *A friend of mine*

To express *a ... of mine/of yours*, etc. place the noun first, followed by the appropriate possessive. For example:

**uns sapatos seus** *some shoes of yours/his, etc.*  
**uma amiga nossa** *a friend of ours*

---

## Dialogue 3

Sr Mendes shows Sylvia round the coffee plantation, and explains how things used to be.

**Sr Mendes** Tudo é muito diferente agora. Antigamente havia menos tecnologia, não havia tantas máquinas, e mais pessoas trabalhavam por aqui.

**Sylvia** Mas, não é mais fácil hoje em dia?

**Sr Mendes** Isso, sim, mas também é um pouco mais impessoal. Antes a gente falava muito, comíamos juntos, íamos a bailes nas outras fazendas, e ajudávamos uns aos outros. Hoje existe muito mais competição.

**Sylvia** E a cidade, mudou também?

<b>Sr Mendes</b>	Mudou, sim. Todos os dias íamos ao centro, tomar um cafezinho, falar com os amigos, e depois jogávamos cartas e a vida passava na valsa. Hoje é tudo movimento, rápido, dinheiro.
<b>Sylvia</b>	Mas pelo menos tem uma bela fazenda.
<b>Sr Mendes</b>	Sim, casa, família, boa comida e um estilo de vida que não tínhamos antes – sim, tudo tem recompensa. Vamos ver os processos lá dentro?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Vamos, e depois um bom cafezinho!

**antigamente** *before, in the past*

**tecnologia (a)** *technology*

**máquinas (as)** *machines*

**trabalhavam** *they used to work*

**impessoal** *impersonal*

**íamos** *we used to go*

**bailes (os)** *dances*

**existe** *there exists*

**competição (a)** *competition*

**a vida passava na valsa** *life went with the flow*

**ajudávamos uns aos outros** *we used to help one another*

**estilo de vida (o)** *lifestyle*

**jogávamos** *we used to play*

**movimento (o)** *rush*

**dinheiro (o)** *money*

**pelo menos** *at least*

**bela** *lovely*

**tínhamos** *we had, used to have*

**recompensa (a)** *reward*

**processos (os)** *processes*

**mudou** *it has changed*

## Grammar

### The imperfect – the way we used to be

Another function of the imperfect tense is to describe how things ‘used to be’ or things you ‘used to do’. You can introduce statements with expressions like:

**antes/antigamente/no passado** *before/in the past*

**quando era jovem/éramos** *when I/you/he was young/we were*

**jovens** *young*

**quando morávamos em ...** *when we used to live in ...*



Look at these examples:

**Quando João morava na Índia,  
bebia chá todos os dias.**

*When John lived (used to live) in  
India, he drank (used to drink)  
tea every day.*

**Antes de me casar, eu trabalhava  
num banco.**

*Before I married, I worked (used  
to work) in a bank.*

---

## Test yourself

**havia ...**

*there was/were ...*

**já não mais está (lá)**

*it's no longer (there)*

**como era?**

*what was it like?*

**onde estava?**

*where was it?*

**só queria este/esta**

*I only wanted this one*

**o que (ele) queria?**

*what did (he) want?*

**era alto/gordo/forte**

*he was tall/fat/strong (large)*

**50 e tantos anos**

*50-odd/50-ish*

**antigamente dançávamos**

*we used to dance in the past*

**um amigo meu/seu/nosso**

*a friend of mine/yours/ours*

---

## Practice

**1** Now can you do the following?

- a** Say there was a blouse I liked in the shop window.
- b** Say it was on the right of the display.
- c** Say she was short, with long hair and blue eyes.
- d** Say he was probably 40 or so years old.
- e** Ask is it not more interesting nowadays?
- f** Say we used to swim every day.

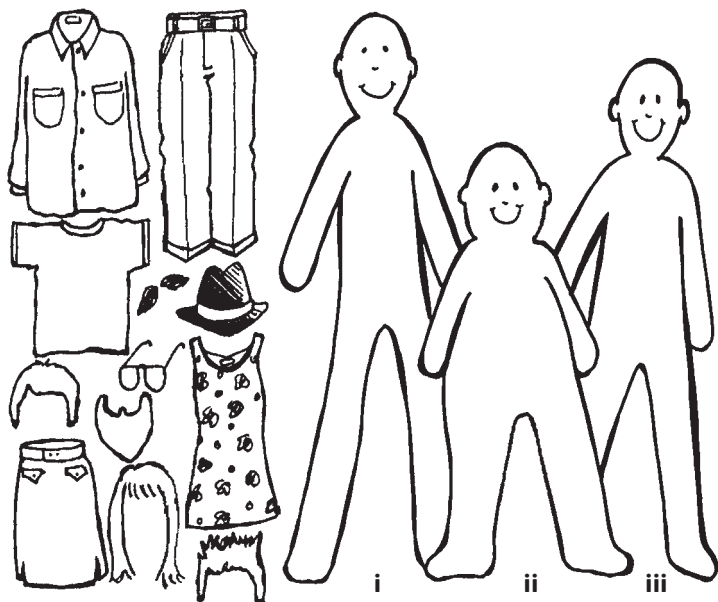
**2** Decide in each case whether the verb should be in the imperfect or the preterite (simple past) tense.

- a** Ontem eu fui/ia à cidade para comprar um selo.
- b** Quando era/foi jovem, Carlos fumava.

- c Nós jantamos/jantávamos quando o telefone tocou.
- d Antigamente eles comiam/comeram muito mal.
- e Na semana passada ela veio/vinha à minha casa.
- f Onde estava/estive você quando eu te telefonei?

CD2, TR 7, 04:12

- 3 Listen to descriptions of people, and decide which articles of clothing go on each body.



- 4 Form the correct part of the imperfect tense for the verbs, and link them to the second part of the sentence.

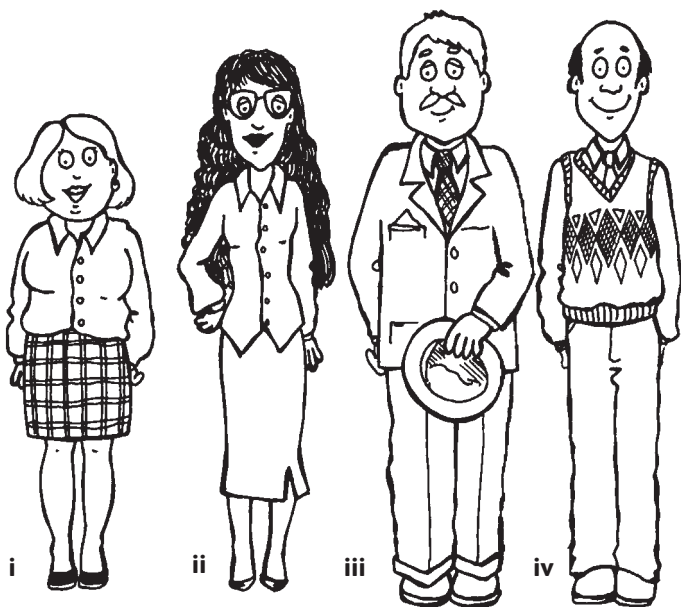
Quando éramos jovens ...

- |                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| a ir _____      | i mais energia.             |
| b brincar _____ | ii aos bailes.              |
| c ter _____     | iii férias com nossos pais. |
| d estudar _____ | iv no campo.                |
| e passar _____  | v todos os dias.            |

**5** Complete your part in this dialogue in a shop.

- You** *(Say there was a shirt in the shop window, but it's not there now.)*  
**Emp.** Como era?  
**You** *(Say it was black and was made of wool.)*  
**Emp.** E onde estava exatamente?  
**You** *(Say it was on the left of the display, behind the trousers.)*  
**Emp.** Ah sim, lamento, mas vendemos aquela ontem. Quer ver os outros modelos que temos?  
**You** *(Say no thanks. I only wanted that one.)*  
**Emp.** Está bem. Adeus.

**6** Link up the following descriptions with the correct pictures.



- a** João é alto e forte. Tem cabelo curto e liso e um bigode. Está vestido de terno e chapéu.

- b** Sabrina é de estatura média e magra. Tem cabelo comprido. Usa óculos.
- c** Lúcia é baixa e um pouco gorda. O cabelo dela é liso e curto, e ela está vestida de saia e blusa.
- d** Maurício é alto e magro. É careca.

# 18

## O que você tem?

### What's the matter?

In this unit you will learn

- *How to describe illness and ailments*
- *How to deal with the chemist and doctor*
- *How to cope with an accident*
- *How to say goodbye*

#### Dialogue 1

Sylvia has returned to the Ferreira's house in São Paulo, but has woken up not feeling very well.

CD2, TR 8, 00:09

- Sylvia** Marli, não me sinto nada bem.  
**Marli** O que você tem?  
**Sylvia** Estou com dor de barriga e tenho uma dor de cabeça.  
**Marli** Parece muito pálida. Vou chamar nosso médico. Fique aí na cama até ele chegar.  
[40 minutos mais tarde]  
**Médico** Onde dói, senhora Peters?  
**Sylvia** A barriga e a cabeça. Os olhos também me doem.  
**Médico** Que comeu ontem?  
**Sylvia** Ontem à noite saímos para um restaurante e eu comi um arroz com mariscos.

<b>Médico</b>	E em geral tem algum problema quando come peixe?
<b>Sylvia</b>	Geralmente não. É grave?
<b>Médico</b>	Não se preocupe, senhora Peters. Creio que é só uma pequena alergia. Fique onde está, na cama, até sábado, e tome este medicamento.

**não me sinto nada bem** *I don't feel at all well*

**o que você tem?** *what's the matter?*

**me dói/doem ...** *my ... hurts/hurt*

**barriga (a)** *belly*

**dor (a)** *pain*

**cabeça (a)** *head*

**pálida** *pale*

**médico (o)** *doctor*

**fique** *stay*

**cama (a)** *bed*

**até ele chegar** *until he arrives*

**saímos** *we went out*

**arroz com mariscos(o)** *seafood risotto*

**grave** *serious*

**não se preocupe** *don't worry*

**creio que** *I think/believe that*

**alergia (a)** *allergy/reaction*

**medicamento (o)** *medication*

### True or false?

Mark these statements **verdadeiro** or **falso**.

V F

- a** Sylvia has a sore stomach.
- b** Her teeth also hurt.
- c** Last night she ate steak and rice.

---

## Grammar

### 1 Feeling ill

To express ailments, you can use the verb **doer** *to hurt* in the following way:

indirect object pronoun + **doer** + part/s of body

me	dói	a cabeça = <i>my head hurts</i>
lhe	doem	os olhos = <i>his/her/your eyes hurt</i>

What you are doing is saying that x gives pain to you/him, etc.

You can also use:

ter uma dor de ... (*to have a pain of ...*)

ter uma dor em (no, na, nos, nas) ... (*to have a pain in/on ...*)

estar com dor de/no, na, nos, nas ... (*to be with pain in/on the ...*)

These are most common in Brazil.

<b>Tenho uma dor de cabeça.</b>	<i>I have a headache.</i>
<b>Ele tem uma dor nos olhos.</b>	<i>He has sore eyes.</i>

Other useful expressions:

<b>uma enxaqueca</b>	<i>a migraine</i>
<b>ter gripe</b>	<i>to have a cold</i>
<b>ter insolação</b>	<i>to have sunstroke</i>
<b>cortar</b>	<i>to cut</i>
<b>magoar</b>	<i>to hurt</i>
<b>bater</b>	<i>to hit</i>
<b>sentir-se enjoado/a</b>	<i>to feel nauseous</i>
<b>vomitare/passar mal</b>	<i>to vomit/to be sick</i>

**O corpo** *The body*

You cannot describe where your pain is adequately without knowing the parts of the body, although you can just point and say

‘me dói aqui’ *it hurts me here*. Here is a body and head for you to study.



## Dialogue 2

When she goes to the chemist (a *farmácia*) to pick up Sylvia's medicine, Marli overhears another customer.

<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Bom dia. Diga por favor.
<b>Cliente</b>	Tem alguma coisa para dor de garganta?
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Sim, temos estas pastilhas que são excelentes, ou este xarope.
<b>Cliente</b>	Levo as pastilhas.
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	É só?
<b>Cliente</b>	Não, o que tem para queimaduras de sol?
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Hmm, este creme é bom. É só 2 reais e 40 centavos.
	(Contd)



<b>Cliente</b>	Bom, levo dois frascos.
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Então, são 7 reais e 80 centavos.
<b>Cliente</b>	Também preciso de alguma coisa para meus lábios – estão muito secos.
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Tem isto, que é novo –é um batom transparente que protege o lábio antes e depois do sol.
<b>Cliente</b>	Muito bem. Vou experimentar.
<b>Farmacêutico</b>	Agora são 8 reais e 45 centavos. Adeus e espero que melhore!

QUICK VOCAB

**tem alguma coisa para ...?** *do you have anything for ...?*

**garganta (a)** *throat*

**pastilhas (as)** *pastilles, lozenges*

**xarope (o)** *syrup, medicine*

**o que tem para ...?** *what do you have for ...?*

**queimaduras de sol (as)** *sunburn*

**creme (o)** *cream*

**lábios (os)** *lips*

**secos** *dry*

**novo** *new*

**batom (o)** *lipstick*

**protege** *protects*

**antes e depois do sol** *before and after sun*

## Grammar

### Medicines

Here are a few useful items you may need to purchase at the chemist's:

QV

**comprimidos (os)** *pills*

**uma ligadura** *a bandage*

**toalhas higiênicas (as)** *sanitary towels*

**repelente de insetos (o)** *insect repellent*

**aspirina (a)** *aspirin*  
**um band-aid** *a plaster*  
**um colírio** *an eyewash*  
**antihistamínico(o)** *antihistamine*

## Subjunctive verbs

The expression **Espero que melhore** *I hope that you get well (better)* introduces us to another area of verbs in Portuguese, which is extremely complex, and which causes the most concern to learners as they progress a little further. We are only going to touch lightly upon it as an introduction.

So far, you have learnt some different tenses of verbs, to help you talk in various time zones. Now we are going to look at something called the *subjunctive* mood, which also has a set of tenses, but used in very different, and specific, circumstances. One of these, in the present tense, is used, as you saw in the dialogue, after the verb *to hope*, or *to wish*, when you are wishing something for someone else.

It is also used after the following, amongst many others:

<b>esperar que</b>	<i>to hope/wish that</i>
<b>duvidar que</b>	<i>to doubt that</i>
<b>sentir que</b>	<i>to feel sorry that</i>
<b>é impossível que</b>	<i>it is impossible that</i>
<b>é incrível que</b>	<i>it is incredible that</i>
<b>é improvável que</b>	<i>it is improbable that</i>

The main trigger is the word **que**, as it is the verb which follows **que** that goes into the subjunctive form. You have in fact come across the subjunctive before, in the guise of commands. Remember in Unit 7, you learnt how the endings of **-ar** verbs became like **-er** verbs, and those of **-er** and **-ir** verbs became like **-ar** ones? That is the formation of the present subjunctive. Here again to remind you are our three regular verbs:

<i>Present</i>	<i>subjunctive</i>			
<b>falar</b> <i>to speak</i>	<b>fale</b>	<b>fale</b>	<b>falemos</b>	<b>falem</b>
<b>comer</b> <i>to eat</i>	<b>coma</b>	<b>coma</b>	<b>comamos</b>	<b>comam</b>
<b>partir</b> <i>to depart/leave/break</i>	<b>parta</b>	<b>parta</b>	<b>partamos</b>	<b>partam</b>

Look at these examples:

**Espero que você coma bem.**

*I hope that you eat well.*

**Ela duvida que ele parta  
amanhã.**

*She doubts that he will depart  
tomorrow.*

**É impossível que elas escrevam  
tanto.**

*It's impossible that they (should)  
write so much.*

As usual, watch out for irregulars.

The subjunctive is something that takes a long time to sink in, but at least with a small notion of it under your belt, you are armed to understand a little bit more about the structures that may be used in conversation with you.

## Dialogue 3

On the way back home Marli witnesses an accident. She goes over to the injured person.

CD2, TR 8: 02:37

<b>Marli</b>	Você precisa de ajuda?
<b>Sr</b>	Obrigado. Tenho uma dor na perna. Acho que está partida. Que dor! Não posso mexer nada.
<b>Marli</b>	Que aconteceu?
<b>Sr</b>	Eu estava atravessando a rua sem problemas; tinha chegado mais ou menos ao centro quando de repente – baf! – um carro me bateu e aqui estou.
<b>Marli</b>	Parece que o carro não parou. Idiota! Bom, não se preocupe, senhor. Vou chamar uma ambulância. Não demora muito.

	(Marli uses the telephone in a nearby shop.)
<b>Marli</b>	Alô, escute, houve um acidente na rua Moraes Sales.
<b>Telefonista</b>	Tem alguém ferido?
<b>Marli</b>	Sim, um senhor, a perna foi quebrada quando um carro a bateu. Precisamos duma ambulância.
<b>Telefonista</b>	Onde está exatamente?
<b>Marli</b>	Na rua Moraes Sales perto da praça Paulista, ao lado da igreja Santa Augusta. O nome do senhor é Paulo Mendonça.
<b>Telefonista</b>	E seu nome senhora?
<b>Marli</b>	Eu sou Marli Ferreira.
<b>Telefonista</b>	Está bem. Uma ambulância está a caminho.

**ajuda (a)** *help*

**mexer** *to move*

**que aconteceu?** *what happened?*

**estava atravessando** *was crossing*

**tinha chegado** *had arrived*

**de repente** *suddenly*

**bateu** *hit*

**quebrada, partida** *broken*

**parou** *stopped*

**idiota (o)** *idiot*

**demora** *take a while*

**escute** *listen*

**ferido** *injured*

**foi quebrada** *was broken*

**está a caminho** *is on the way*

## Grammar

### Imperfect

In Unit 14 you saw how you could use the verb **estar** plus the gerund – the ‘ing’ part of the verb (**-ando/-endo/-indo**) – to

make an action that is currently happening. You can also do this using the imperfect of **estar** and the gerund to describe an action in the past which was in the process of happening, e.g. **Estava atravessando** *I was crossing*. This is used more commonly than the pure imperfect on its own – **atravessava** *I was crossing*.

### The past, part 3

If you want to describe an action which took place and was completed before another past action began, you use a tense known as the pluperfect. In English it corresponds to *had done*. Look at these examples in English:

*When he arrived home, she had (already) gone out.  
We were sure he had told us a lie.*

And from the dialogue:

<b>Tinha chegado ... quando de repente ...</b>	<i>I had arrived ... when suddenly ....</i>
--	---

This tense is often used in relating incidents, or giving a report of a sequence of events.

It is formed using the imperfect of **ter**, plus the past participle. For example:

<b>Eles tinham comido muito.</b>	<i>They had eaten a lot.</i>
<b>Maria tinha falado com ele antes de sair.</b>	<i>Maria had spoken with him before going out.</i>

### The passive

With most actions, there are two ways of expressing what has happened. Look at these two examples:

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <b>1 Paulo quebrou a perna.</b>         | <i>Paul broke his leg.</i>          |
| <b>2 A perna foi quebrada (por ...)</b> | <i>The leg was broken (by ...).</i> |

Statement 1 is known as an active sentence, where the subject of the verb actively carries out the action. Statement 2 is called a *passive sentence*, because the object in fact becomes the subject, or is acted upon by someone or something, known as the agent.

The passive is constructed using **ser** plus the past participle of the relevant verb, used as an adjective. If you want to say who or what the agent was/is, you introduce it with **por** by. For example:

<b>A janela foi fechada pela professora.</b>	<i>The window was closed by the teacher.</i>
<b>Os soldados foram mortos.</b>	<i>The soldiers were killed.</i>
<b>Eu fui mordido por uma abelha.</b>	<i>I was stung by a bee.</i>

**estar** and the past participle used as an adjective conveys the *state* something is in as a result of an action, e.g.

<b>A janela estava fechada.</b>	<i>The window was closed (i.e. We can see it has already been closed.).</i>
<b>Ele estava perdido.</b>	<i>He was lost.</i>

---

## Practice

### 1 Can you now:

- a** Say that you don't feel at all well.
- b** Ask your husband/wife where it hurts.
- c** Ask if the chemist has anything for toothache.
- d** Ask what he has for migraines.
- e** Ask what has happened.
- f** Tell the emergency services that there's been an accident on Campo street.

### 2 Link up the statements on the next page with the pictures below.



- a** Tem alguma coisa para insolação?  
**b** Dói-me a barriga.  
**c** João bateu o dedo.  
**d** Ele tem uma dor nos olhos.  
**e** Meu marido tem uma dor de cabeça.  
**f** Cortei a perna. Preciso de um band-aid.

**3** Link up the two parts of each sentence correctly, and form the second verb (in brackets) in the subjunctive.

- a** Esperamos que **i** eles [estudar] tanto.  
**b** Sinto muito que **ii** nós [ganhar] muito dinheiro.  
**c** É incrível que **iii** sua filha [melhorar].  
**d** Ela duvida que **iv** Sonia [estar] doente.  
**e** É impossível que **v** ele me [amar].  
**f** Espero que **vi** ele [vir] hoje.

🔊 **CD2, TR 8, 04:19**

**4** Listen to the phone call to the emergency services and write down the following information.

Accident where?	How many	Injuries?	Exact
Name of caller?	injured?		location?

**5** Place the correct past form of the verb and give any other information required to complete the sentences.

- a** A escola **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ [*closed*] \_\_\_\_\_ durante as férias.
- b** Os presentes **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ [*given*] \_\_\_\_\_ aos turistas [*by the hotel owner*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- c** As portas **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ [*open*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- d** Eu **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ [*invited*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- e** A carta **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ [*written*] \_\_\_\_\_ [*by Luís*] \_\_\_\_\_.
- f** Os sapatos **ser/estar** \_\_\_\_\_ muito [*dirty*] \_\_\_\_\_.

**6** Complete your part of the dialogue at the chemist's.

- You** (*Ask the pharmacist do you have anything for a headache?*)
- Farm.** Sim, temos estas aspirinas que são boas, ou tem estes comprimidos.
- You** (*Say I'll take the aspirins.*)
- Farm.** É só?
- You** (*Say no, what do you have for allergies?*)
- Farm.** Tem este creme repelente, se é alergia a insetos, ou estes comprimidos antihistamínicos.
- You** (*Say I'll take a bottle of the cream. How much is that please?*)
- Farm.** São 6 reais e 40 centavos, por favor.
- You** (*Say thank you and goodbye.*)

## Insight

It's advisable to have any injections before you get to Brazil, drink only bottled water and avoid any shellfish, which may not be freshly caught. Chemists can be extremely helpful; hospital treatment is chaotic, although there is an excellent hospital in São Paulo. Most medication is available, but take supplies if you are travelling inland or into the Amazon.



## Dialogue 4

It's time for Sylvia to leave. The Ferreiras have taken her to the airport and are saying goodbye.

- José** Sylvia, foi tão bom te ver outra vez. Volte logo – sabe que tem uma casa aqui sempre. Será sempre bem-vinda.
- Sylvia** Obrigada, José. E Marli também, obrigada por tudo. Foi uma visita fantástica, e vocês foram muito generosos. Espero-os lá na Inglaterra, tá? A próxima vez vocês vão ficar conosco.
- Marli** Foi um prazer te conhecer finalmente. José tinha falado tanto em ti. Volte sempre, e nossos cumprimentos ao resto da família. Leve consigo estes CDs da nossa música.
- Sylvia** Que legal! Gilberto Gil, Milton Nascimento, Simone, alguns dos meus músicos preferidos. Obrigada e até à próxima.
- José** Se Deus quiser.
- Sylvia** E se eu ganhar na loteria! Adeus. Tchau, tchau!

**volte logo** *come back soon*

**por tudo** *for everything*

**generosos** *kind*

**foi um prazer** *it was a pleasure*

**finalmente** *finally*

**em ti** *about you*

**músicos preferidos (os)** *favourite singers*

**se Deus quiser** *hopefully/God willing*

**se eu ganhar na loteria** *If I win the lottery*

**volte sempre** *come back again*

## Test yourself

**não me sinto nada bem  
o que você tem?**

*I don't feel at all well  
what's the matter (with you)?*

**me dói/doem  
não se preocupe  
tem alguma coisa para ...?  
o que tem para ...?  
espero que melhore  
que aconteceu?  
houve um acidente  
volte sempre**

*my ... hurt/s  
don't worry  
do you have anything for ...?  
what do you have for ...?  
I hope you get better  
what (has) happened?  
there's been an accident  
come back (again)*

**Congratulations on completing  
*Complete Brazilian Portuguese!***

I hope you have enjoyed working your way through the course. I am always keen to receive feedback from people who have used my course, so why not contact me and let me know your reactions? I'll be particularly pleased to receive your praise, but I should also like to know if you think things could be improved. I always welcome comments and suggestions and I do my best to incorporate constructive suggestions into later editions.

You can contact me through the publishers at:  
Teach Yourself Books, Hodder Headline Ltd, 338 Euston Road,  
London NW1 3BH.

I hope you will want to build on your knowledge of Portuguese and have made a few suggestions to help you do this in the section entitled **Taking it further**.

*Boa sorte, e força!*  
Sue Tyson-Ward

# Testing yourself: Units 1–9

In this unit you will have further practice on the grammatical points and vocabulary items from Units 1–9. You may wish to revise the Grammar sections before you begin, or use this unit as a progress test. All the answers are in the Key to Testing yourself.

- 1** Decide which article is required for each noun, and tick the appropriate boxes.

	<b>o</b>	<b>a</b>	<b>os</b>	<b>as</b>
livro				
casa				
filhas				
prato				
jornais				
	<b>um</b>	<b>uma</b>	<b>uns</b>	<b>umas</b>
cidade				
senhores				
ruas				
país				
estação				

- 2** Supply the correct form of the demonstrative (**este** or **aquele**, etc.) in each case.

- a** \_\_\_\_\_ livro que tenho é francês.  
**b** \_\_\_\_\_ hotéis ali na praça são muito bons.  
**c** Gosta d \_\_\_\_\_ casas aqui?  
**d** \_\_\_\_\_ senhora é minha amiga.

- 3** Use the correct form of **todo** (**tudo**) etc.

- a** \_\_\_\_\_ é muito interessante aqui.  
**b** \_\_\_\_\_ minhas amigas estudam português.  
**c** Ela não gosta de \_\_\_\_\_ o filme.  
**e** Quero comprar \_\_\_\_\_ a roupa.

- f** Nós adoramos \_\_\_\_\_ neste país.  
**g** \_\_\_\_\_ as semanas vou ao cinema.

**4** Write out the Portuguese for these numbers.

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| <b>a</b> 36    | <b>f</b> 12,654  |
| <b>b</b> 152   | <b>g</b> 25,999  |
| <b>c</b> 500   | <b>h</b> 100,000 |
| <b>d</b> 1,321 | <b>i</b> 14      |
| <b>e</b> 5,800 | <b>j</b> 95      |

**5** What are these numbers?

- a** oitocentos e noventa e nove  
**b** setecentos e vinte e três  
**c** quatrocentos e sessenta e oito  
**d** dois mil, quinhentos e um  
**e** quatro mil, oitocentos e dois  
**f** sete mil, quinhentos e cinquenta e quatro  
**g** onze mil e cem  
**h** sessenta e oito mil, trezentos e trinta e seis  
**i** cento e cinco  
**j** trezentos e sete

**6** Form the present tense correctly.

- a** Eles não [comer] \_\_\_\_\_ carne.  
**b** Eu [falar] \_\_\_\_\_ alemão.  
**c** Você [ir] \_\_\_\_\_ ao trabalho?  
**d** Ela não [partir] \_\_\_\_\_ hoje.  
**e** Nós [fazer] \_\_\_\_\_ muito barulho.  
**f** João [viajar] \_\_\_\_\_ todos os meses.  
**g** Vocês não [escrever] \_\_\_\_\_ muitas cartas.  
**h** Os senhores [compreender] \_\_\_\_\_?

**7** Decide in each case whether the verb should be **ser**, **estar** or **ficar**, and write the correct form.

- a** Ela [ ] francesa.  
**b** Onde [ ] minha bolsa?  
**c** O banco [ ] ao lado do museu.  
**d** As chaves [ ] em cima da mesa.

- e** Todas as lojas [   ] muito perto do centro.
- f** Eles [   ] engenheiros.
- g** O apartamento [   ] no segundo andar.
- h** João [   ] meu amigo.

**8** Make up whole sentences by selecting an appropriate form of **ter** or **haver** and using a suitable ending.

- |                        |       |                                 |
|------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> Meu irmão     | temos | <b>i</b> um bom carro.          |
| <b>b</b> Na cidade     | têm   | <b>ii</b> quinze anos.          |
| <b>c</b> Nós           | tem   | <b>iii</b> para beber?          |
| <b>d</b> O que         | há    | <b>iv</b> meu livro?            |
| <b>e</b> Não           | tem   | <b>v</b> muitas pessoas.        |
| <b>f</b> Júlia e Maria | há    | <b>vi</b> fome.                 |
| <b>g</b> Você          | tenho | <b>vii</b> lojas interessantes. |
| <b>h</b> Na praça      | há    | <b>viii</b> uma casa grande.    |

In the Key you will find suggested sample answers.

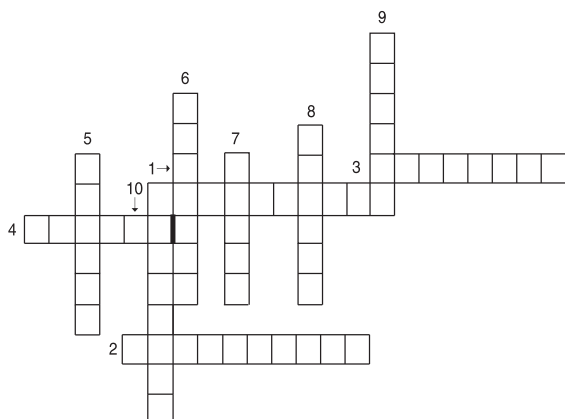
**9** Form the correct part of the command in each phrase.

- a** Falar [sing.] mais devagar.
- b** Comer [sing.] menos.
- c** Fechar [sing.] a porta.
- d** Não abrir [plur.] as janelas.
- e** Beber [plur.] mais água.
- f** Não subir [plur.] estas escadas.
- g** Começar [sing.] agora.
- h** Preencher [sing.] esta ficha.

**10** Follow the clues to fill in the crossword on nationalities and countries.

- Across:**
- 1 Pessoas dos Estados Unidos.
  - 2 O país dos ingleses.
  - 3 A língua dos espanhóis.
  - 4 Rio é no ...
- Down:**
- 5 Paris é o capital da ...
  - 6 Vêm da Alemanha.
  - 7 Da Grécia.

- 8 País dos italianos.  
 9 Pessoa da China.  
 10 Os alemães vêm da ...



- 11** Can you complete these words, which are all items of clothing?

**a** v-----

**d** --p-t-

**g** -h---u

**b** s---

**e** --m--a

**h** l-v--

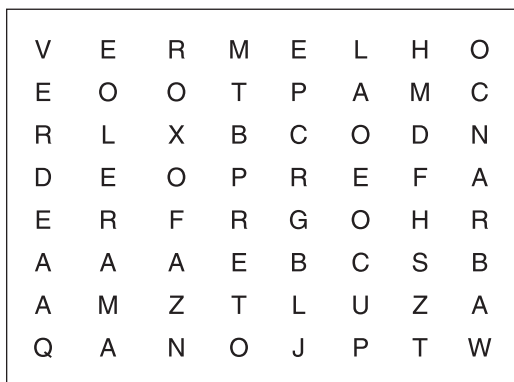
**c** c--ç--

**f** b-u--

**i** c-s---

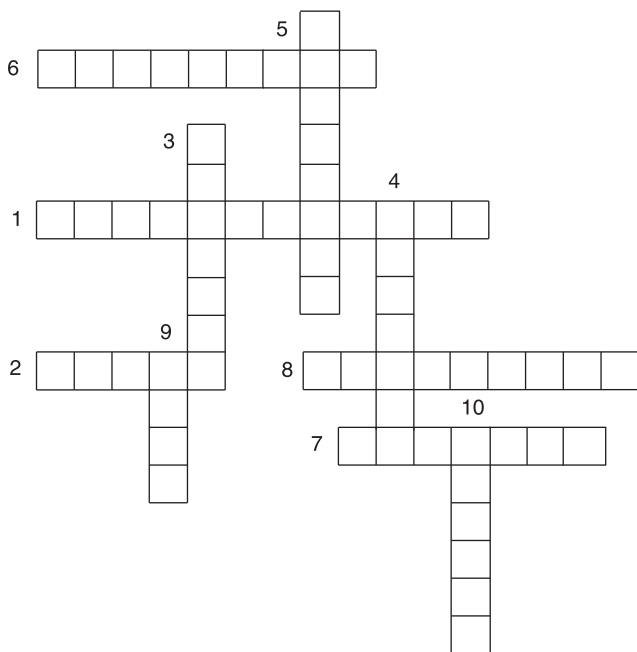
**j** g----t-

- 12** Can you find nine colours in this wordsearch?



**13** Follow the clues and complete the crossword on shops and facilities.

- Across:**
- 1 Grande loja.
  - 2 Para trocar dinheiro ...
  - 6 Onde se compram botas, sapatos, etc.
  - 7 Onde se vendem frutas, legumes, peixe ...
  - 8 Fica na rua – para comprar jornais, mapas, revistas.
- Down:**
- 3 Para comprar selos ...
  - 4 Onde se compra carne.
  - 5 Onde se compram livros.
  - 9 Para comer e beber ...
  - 10 Onde se vê um filme.



## Testing yourself: Units 10–18

In this unit you will have further practice on the grammatical points and vocabulary items from Units 10–18. You may wish to revise the Grammar sections before you begin, or use this unit as a progress test. All the answers are in the Key to Testing yourself on Units 10–18.

### 1 Form adverbs from the words in brackets.

- a [súbito] \_\_\_\_\_ vi meu amigo na praça.
- b [final] \_\_\_\_\_ os alunos terminaram o exame.
- c Sai daqui [imediat] \_\_\_\_\_!
- d Não entendo esta língua [fácil] \_\_\_\_\_.
- e [aparente] \_\_\_\_\_, ela só tem treze anos!
- f Ela está [temporário] \_\_\_\_\_ fora do país.
- g Os dois irmãos cantam muito [mau] \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 Change the verbs from the present tense to the preterite.

- a Elas não [compreendem] \_\_\_\_\_ muito.
- b Todos os trenes [partem] \_\_\_\_\_ tarde.
- c Eu [vendo] \_\_\_\_\_ fotografias.
- d Maria e Sônia [chegam] \_\_\_\_\_ de táxi.
- e Pedro [está] \_\_\_\_\_ no hospital.
- f Vocês [percebem] \_\_\_\_\_ tudo?
- g Você [tem] \_\_\_\_\_ dinheiro?
- h [tiramos] \_\_\_\_\_ as malas do hotel.

### 3 Form the imperfect tense correctly in these examples.

- a Quantos anos [ter] \_\_\_\_\_ você quando foi para a Alemanha?
- b Durante as férias nós [acordar] \_\_\_\_\_ tarde todos os dias.
- c Eu [estar] \_\_\_\_\_ tomando banho quando ele telefonou.



- d Eles [**sentir-se**] \_\_\_\_\_ cansados depois de trabalhar todo o dia.
- e Ela só [**querer**] \_\_\_\_\_ comprar uma coisa – uma blusa amarela!
- f Antigamente, ele [**ir**] \_\_\_\_\_ ao cinema cada semana.
- 4 Choose the correct form of **ter**, and form the past participle of the verbs in bold, to form sentences using the pluperfect tense.

a	Maria e Lú	_____	<b>ir</b> ao cinema quando eu cheguei.
b	Eu	_____	<b>comprar</b> um novo carro.
c	O professor	_____	<b>falar</b> muito antes de terminar a aula.
d	Eu e José	_____	<b>comer</b> pouco.
e	Sra Guedes	_____	<b>subir</b> ao quarto quando o marido telefonou.
f	Vocês	_____	<b>viver</b> na França.

- 5 Change the verbs in **bold** into the present subjunctive.

- a Espero que você **ter** uma boa viagem.
- b Ana quer que o filho **estudar** bem.
- c Talvez ela **fazer** um bolo delicioso.
- d Duvidamos que vocês **abrir** seus livros hoje.
- e É estranho que eles não **ir** à escola.
- f Talvez nós não **falar** muito bem.

- 6 Write the answers to these sums in full in Portuguese.

- a  $53 + 72 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- b  $14 + 9 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- c  $180 - 25 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- d  $250 \div 5 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- e  $46 + 362 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- f  $841 + 659 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- g  $1200 \div 20 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- h  $5 \times 500 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- i  $25,364 - 63 =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- j  $123,801 + 99 =$  \_\_\_\_\_

- 7** Are the following numbers written correctly in Portuguese?  
If they are not, give the correct form in full.

	✓/✗	correct version
<b>a</b> 531 = quinhentos e trinta e um	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>b</b> 1,250 = mil, duzentos e cinquenta	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>c</b> 348 = trezentos e quarenta e nove	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>d</b> 96 = noventa e seis	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>e</b> 5,221 = cinco mil, duzentos e trinta e um	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>f</b> 26,860 = vinte e seis mil, novecentos e sessenta	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>g</b> 72 = setenta e dois	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>h</b> 28 = vinte e oito	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____

- 8** Choose the appropriate past participle from the box for each sentence to form a passive. Make it agree with the noun/pronoun.

- a** O gato foi \_\_\_\_\_ pelo cão.  
**b** A porta foi \_\_\_\_\_.  
**c** Eles foram \_\_\_\_\_ pelos soldados.  
**d** O carro foi \_\_\_\_\_.  
**e** As casas foram \_\_\_\_\_ pelo terremoto (*earthquake*).  
**f** Eu (fem.) fui \_\_\_\_\_.

morto
decepcionado
vendido
mordido
destruído
aberto

- 9** Can you find ten items of food or drink in this wordsearch?

O	B	M	E	Y	O	K	G	S	L
T	S	A	N	D	U	Í	C	H	E
N	O	L	E	I	T	E	Y	O	G
U	P	J	F	A	R	U	P	J	U
S	A	C	N	V	M	Ã	C	N	M
E	Y	O	E	Y	O	K	G	S	E
R	O	J	I	E	U	Q	R	U	S
P	A	Ç	Ú	C	A	R	U	P	J
F	A	C	N	W	T	I	L	H	D
Z	V	M	Q	R	O	H	N	I	V

**10** Follow the numerical guidance, and fill in ten months of the year on the grid.

**Across:** 1 o décimo-primeiro mês

2 o quinto mês

3 o segundo

4 o quarto

5 o décimo-segundo

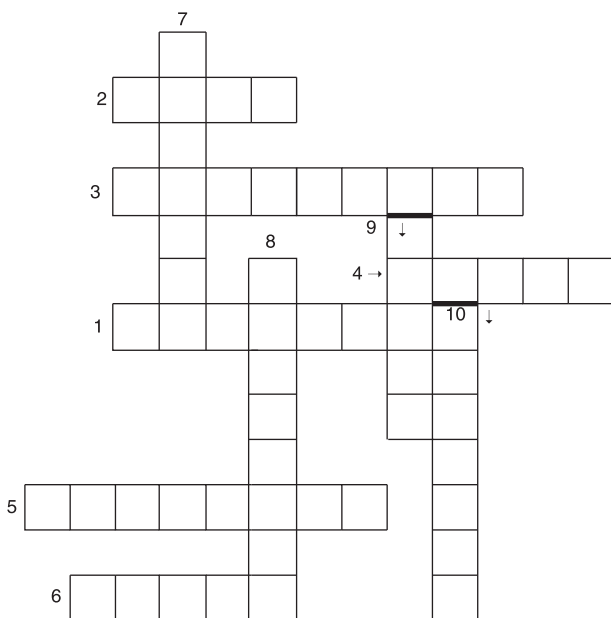
6 o sétimo

**Down:** 7 o primeiro mês

8 o nono mês

9 o terceiro

10 décimo



**11** Find the opposite pairs.

<b>a</b>	alto
<b>b</b>	gordo
<b>c</b>	velho
<b>d</b>	interessante
<b>e</b>	simpático
<b>f</b>	bonito

<b>i</b>	magro
<b>ii</b>	chato
<b>iii</b>	feio
<b>iv</b>	horrível
<b>v</b>	baixo
<b>vi</b>	jovem

**12** Can you find ten parts of the body in this wordsearch?

O	L	H	O	K	G	S	M	Ã	O
K	G	S	X	B	Q	R	U	P	J
F	A	C	N	Q	D	O	K	G	S
X	B	C	A	B	E	Ç	A	C	N
A	C	N	O	K	D	A	C	N	P
N	W	C	N	R	O	R	U	P	É
R	A	C	N	W	E	B	Q	R	U
E	Y	R	U	P	J	L	H	D	Z
P	J	F	I	L	H	D	H	D	Z
V	M	E	Y	Z	V	M	E	A	C

---

# Taking it further

A selection of information on further reading, websites, and things connected with Brazilian Portuguese.

---

## Reading

*História da língua portuguesa*, Paul Teyssier (Sá da Costa, 1990)

*The Romance Languages*, Martin Harris and Nigel Vincent  
(Routledge, 1997)

*The Loom of Language*, Frederick Bodmer (Allen & Unwin, 1946)

*Dicionário Editora da língua portuguesa*, good monolingual  
dictionary (new edn 1994)

*Oxford–Duden Pictorial Dictionary*, detail visual/vocabulary  
(1992)

*Michaelis dicionário prático*, bilingual (English–Portuguese, both  
directions)

*Collins Portuguese dictionaries*, various sizes

*In Action* CD-ROM (Brazilian), Linguaphone

*Brazil: The Once and Future Country*, M.C. Eakin (St Martin's,  
1997)

*Lonely Planet Brazilian Phrase Book*, M. Balla (Lonely Planet,  
1990)

Books by Paulo Coelho, in English or the original

*Heliopolis* (novel), James Scudamore (Harvill Secker, 2009)

*A Death in Brazil* (A book of omissions), Peter Robb (Bloomsbury,  
2005)

Two magazines available in the UK designed for the Brazilian  
community, both have useful contacts and reading material:

REAL: Tel: 020-8534-6183, or online: [www.revistareal.com](http://www.revistareal.com)

LEROS: email: [leros@leros.co.uk](mailto:leros@leros.co.uk), or online: [www.leros.co.uk](http://www.leros.co.uk)

---

## Learning

BBC series *Talk Portuguese*, 2003, includes one programme in Brazil. Also, *Brazil Inside Out*, 2003, a five-programme documentary series, with interviews with local people in five Brazilian regions.

Satellite TV, if you have access to it, will be able to reach Portuguese TV; there is an international channel called RTPi, which often features Brazilian telenovelas, or soap operas.

On-line courses, such as that offered by the University of Glasgow (UK), called *De tudo um pouco*.

Various Portuguese-learning CD-ROMs now available from good bookstores.

Enrol on language classes at your local college/language school.

Try to speak to Brazilians when you are in Brazil – they will be grateful you have made an effort, and will encourage your attempts.

---

## Websites

There are many sites and materials in both English and Portuguese. Here are just a few ideas:

Brazil on the web (Brazilian Embassy site): [www.brazil.org.uk](http://www.brazil.org.uk)

Comunidade de Países de Língua Portuguesa – Portuguese-speaking communities: [www.cplp.org](http://www.cplp.org)

King's College, London – Dept. of Portuguese and Brazilian studies,  
various links: [www.Kcl.ac.uk/depsta/humanities/pobrst/kclhp.htm](http://www.Kcl.ac.uk/depsta/humanities/pobrst/kclhp.htm)

Língua Portuguesa – key this into any search engine (Altavista,  
Google, etc.) and you should link to many more sites.

Grant & Cutler – stockists of Portuguese books in the UK:  
[www.grant-c.demon.co.uk](http://www.grant-c.demon.co.uk)

Universidade de S. Paulo: <http://www.usp.br>

Art and culture: [www.insite.com.br/art](http://www.insite.com.br/art)

Veja magazine: [www.veja.com.br](http://www.veja.com.br)

Brazilian cinema: [www.cinemabrasil.org.br](http://www.cinemabrasil.org.br)

Brazilian Consulate in the UK: [www.consbraslondres.com](http://www.consbraslondres.com)

Brazilian TV channel: [www.tvglobointernacional.com.br](http://www.tvglobointernacional.com.br)

Casa do Brasil em Londres – all kinds of services, including  
translations: [www.casado brasil.org.uk](http://www.casado brasil.org.uk)

---

# Key to the exercises

## Unit 1

True or false? a F b F c V

Exercise 1 1 b 2 b 3 a

Exercise 2 a Boa, Bem, b é c muito

Practice 1 a bom dia/boa tarde/boa noite (tarde) b obrigado/a, tchau c sou/meu nome é X d Tem um apartamento reservado em meu nome? e Oi, tudo bem? 2 Aqui está. / Sim, sou. / Oito dias. / Tchau (adeus) 3 a sete b catorze c dezessete d onze e treze 4 i dezoito 18 ii dez 10 5 a ii b iv c i d iii e v 6 a John Harris b Liverpool c 6 days d room 12

Testing yourself – do you understand? 1 male 2 false 3 true 4 en-suite (5) false

## Unit 2

True or false 1? a f b f c v d f e v

True or false 2? a f b f c v

Practice 1 Não, sou de Birmingham. / É grande e industrial. / Sim, tenho um filho. / Ele se chama David. Tem 28 anos e é professor de francês. / Sim, trabalho numa empresa internacional. 2 a iii b v c i d ii e iv 3 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 4 a cinco/pequenas b brasileira c filhos interessantes d histórica e dois vinhos alemães

Testing yourself – do you understand? 1 22 years old 2 very big, modern, very interesting, 3 no 4 language student, school secretary 5 Olá, John, Tudo bem? Eu estou muito bem. Vou te dizer um



pouco sobre quem sou. Meu nome é Gary, tenho vinte e cinco anos e sou de Bristol. É uma cidade muito bonita – histórica, e turística. Sou casado e tenho um filho, Robert. Sou estudante de tecnologia. Tchau, Gary.

### Unit 3

True or false? a f b v c v d v e f

Exercise a sim b não c não

Practice 1 a é b são c está d é e sou/sou 2 Não, sou de Brighton. / É uma cidade pequena ao sul de Inglaterra. / Sim é bastante perto.  
3 a i b ii c ii d iii e iii 4 1 Santos 2 Cantanduva 3 Campinas  
4 Piracicaba 5 Uberaba

Testing yourself – do you understand? 1 f 2 f 3 v 4 f

### Unit 4

Exercise 1 a no b yes c no

True or false? a v b f c f

Exercise 2 1 b 2 a 3 a

Practice 1 a Há/tem um açougue por aqui? b Onde há/tem um correio? c Que horas são? d São 2 e meia. e Na Alemanha chove (um) pouco. 2 a iii b i c iv d ii e v 3 a farmácia b mercado c café Silvana d praça D. Pedro 4 a Mexico b Japan c Brazil d France e England 5 Desculpe, sabe se há/tem um mercado por aqui? / Sabe se está aberto agora? / São dez e um quarto (quinze). / Fica longe? / Obrigado/a, adeus (tchau). 6 a fica b ali c aqueles d terceira e para

Testing yourself – do you understand? 1 post office 2 Gomes Sá Street 3 Nascimento Street 4 4pm. 5 no

## Unit 5

**Exercise 1** a grande b num café c muito

**Exercise 2** a f b v c f

**Practice 1** a saio de casa b começo o trabalho c 12.45 d 1.30  
e 18.05 2 a às sete e meia b às quinze para às nove c às duas  
e meia d às quatro e 25 e à uma e quinze f às dez para às oito  
3 a Portugal é a seiscentos km da França. b O Brasil é a mil,  
oitocentos e noventa e seis km do México. c A Inglaterra é a mil,  
duzentos e quarenta e sete km de Portugal. d Os Estados Unidos  
são a seis mil, cento e vinte e cinco km da Argentina. 4 a iii b i c v  
d ii e iv

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 true 2 Portuguese 3 D 4 A  
5 false 6 E – airport

## Unit 6

**Exercise a** sports/TV b sports/TV c reading/music

**True or false?** a v b f c v

**Practice 1** a ii b v c i d iv e iii 2 a conheço b sabe c sei d conhece  
e conhecem 3 Speaker 1=C, 2=A, 3=B 4 Adoro nadar, vou à piscina  
aos sábados. / Sim, um pouco. / Prefiro a música jazz. Francisco,  
o que você faz no tempo livre? / Também gosto do teatro, mas os  
ingressos são bastante caros.

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 Vinhos / Mary Black /  
High Street, no. 10 / CEP 23410 Centro / Southampton Hants.  
2 a violão b mecânica geral c desenho artístico e publicitário

## Unit 7

**Exercise 1** C

## Exercise 2 a sapatos b 39 c R85

### Practice 1 a ii b iii c i d vi e v

2 Tem saias? / Acho que é o 42. / Tem em azul-claro? / Quanto é, (custa)? / Levo esta em azul e aquela em preto. / Obrigada

3 a compre / Buy the blouse! b comam / Eat the bread! c vão / Go through (by) here! d faça / Don't be noisy! e trabalhe / Work hard! f falem / Don't talk a lot! 4 a boots b 39 c brown d too big e R\$98

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 salads 2 eat fruits, not sweet things, 3 make a dinner 4 have a good salt bath 5 relax a lot 6 massage

## Unit 8

### Exercise 1 a v b f c f

### Exercise 2 a yes b no c yes

**Practice 1** a Tem uma mesa livre? b Somos cinco. c Não tenho sede. d Que vai pedir? e Garçom por favor. f A conta por favor. 2 a sigam b faça c beba d repitam e falem f traga 3 Para começar uma sopa de legumes. / Ovelha com arroz e salada. / Uma cerveja e uma jarra de água. 4 sobremesa / hoje / sorvete / baunilha / avelã / sim 5 a tenho fome b tem calor c temos sono d tem frio e têm sede 6 a iii b ii c i d iv 7 a dessert b drink c drink d starter e main meal f side dish g starter h side dish

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** Laura – creme de aspargos, omelete, fruta. Marcelo – canja, frango, doce de côco. Sérgio – lula frita, espeto misto, pudim de caramelo. You – no starter, bife na brasa, sorvete. Rita – canja, peixe, fruta.

## Unit 9

**Practice 1** a meus b sua/ a amiga dele c nossa d suas/ as irmãs delas e sua 2 a Pode me levar ao centro da cidade? b Boa viagem! c A que horas parte o próximo ônibus (de luxo) para o Rio?

d Tem troco para uma nota de R\$50? e O que faço para chegar na praça Miraflores? f Conhece um bom restaurante aqui? 3 A que horas parte o próximo ônibus para Fortaleza? / Queria um bilhete de ida e volta. / Tem troco para uma nota de R\$100? / O ônibus sai de onde? 4 a iv b i c v d iii e ii 5 c/f/a/d/g/b/e/h

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 T 2 F 3 F

## Unit 10

**Exercise 1** a R\$360 b no c no

**Exercise 2** Any 3 of: air-conditioning not working / tap won't close / pillow dirty / blinds don't open properly

**Practice** 1 Bom dia, tem um apartamento livre? / Simples por favor. Com banheiro. / Para três dias. / Quanto é por noite? / (Está bem). Onde fica o apartamento? 2 a iii b i c v d iv e ii or iii f i g i 3 Twin/ with bathroom/3/Saturday/ 135/R\$38 per person 4 a Desculpe, o garfo está sujo. b ... o ar-condicionado não está funcionando. c ... a torneira está pingando. d ... o prato está partido. e ... falta uma colher. 5 a ir b comer c terminar d ver e beber

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 Napoli 2 credit card 3 1 double 4 fridge 5 Silvini 6 38 7 none 8 breakfast and dinner

## Unit 11

**Practice** 1 a odeia a rede b não gosto dos cachimbos c preferimos a cerâmica d gosta dos brincos e adoram os artigos de couro 2 a mim b deles c nela d si e você 3 a 1 b 2 c 1 d 2 e 2 4 Estou procurando presentes para minha família. / Tem uma rede? / Quanto é? / Que tem para senhoras? / Vou levar a rede, e esta tapeçaria.

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 17 2 from next year 3 40 4 school 5 guaraná and other soft drinks 6 a coelhinho, b quadrinhos, c aulas

## Unit 12

Exercise a Aliens b não c satírica d tarde e táxi

**Practice** 1 a Por que não vamos ao museu? b A que horas começa o filme? c O concerto termina às dez e meia d Que boa exposição! e Você é meu convidado João f Voltamos de ônibus? 2 a eu me b lhe c te d ele e lo 3 a ii b i c ii d Star Wars e 8.30 f i 4 Por que não vamos almoçar naquele barzinho ali? / Venha, eu te convido e sou eu quem pago. / Insisto, você é meu/minha convidado/a. / Vamos. 5 a no avião da b trem das 2 horas c de táxi/a pé d no carro de

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** a A b B c Vietnam d both e 2 f autobiography

## Unit 13

True or false? a f b f c v d f

**Practice** 1 Boa tarde, quanto custa enviar este pacote a Alemanha por favor? / Bom, queria enviar o pacote e também queria dez selos. / Não, três para Espanha e sete para Inglaterra. / Obrigado/a, onde é a caixa? 2 Buys: ovos / biscoitos / presunto / cerveja / pãezinhos. / Not available: açúcar/mel. / Extra item: olive oil – azeite. 3 a este b essa c aqueles d estes e essas 4 As per CD 5 a Eu posso alugar um carro aqui? b É para oito dias, começando de hoje. c O que faço para chegar no Rio? d Parece que estou perdido/a. e Ponha doze litros de álcool por favor. f Pode verificar a água para mim? 6 a aberto or fechado b abertas or fechadas c feitos d paga e escrita 7 unleaded / 18 litres / no / R\$ 11 8 Bom dia / proibido / praça / perdida / Rio / direita / sinais / segunda / esquerda / estrada

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** a ii b i c iv d xii e viii f v g ix h vi i x j xi k iii l vii

## Unit 14

**Practice** 1 a Que vai fazer quarta feira à tarde Paul? b Estarei lá às dez e meia. c Por que não vamos nadar? d A que horas nos encontramos? e Estou livre a partir das quatro e quinze. f Alô, quem fala? 2 a Carlos Silves b Banco do Brasil c Thurs a.m. d French lesson e golf f 11.45 g hospital 3 Examples: a Amanhã eu comprarei um carro. b O mês que vem nós visitaremos Alemanha. c No domingo Cristina fará um bolo. d O próximo ano eles ganharão a loteria. e Depois de amanhã a Sra Lopes escreverá uma carta. 4 a eles estão dormindo b ela está comendo c nós estamos estudando d eu estou andando e elas estão falando 5 a f b v c v d f e f f v 6 a vi b iii c i d ii e iv f v

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** a novembro b festas c flores d Estados Unidos e ano f cores 1 nature 2 roses, plants, flowers, 3 new varieties of rose, 15 different colours of petunia 4 1954

## Unit 15

**Exercise** 1 c 2 a 3 b

**Practice** 1 a Visitou o museu? b Ficamos duas semanas na Itália. c Quando voltaram de Nova Iorque? d Tem algum recado para mim? e Acabo de chegar no hotel. f Os italianos falam tão rapidamente. 2 a comi b compraram c partimos d gostaram e escreveu 3 a viu b fiz c pusemos d foram e teve 4 Voltei ontem à tarde. Cheguei aqui às três e vinte e cinco. / Sim, muito. Andei na praia em Copacabana, visitei o Pão de Açúcar e vi as favelas. / Sim, comi feijoadinha e provei a caipirinha. 5 a Eles se levantaram cedo. b Ela correu rapidamente. c Elas cantaram mal. d Nós falamos devagar. e Eu toquei piano bem. 6 Inglaterra/ teatro/ visitei/ palácio/ Grécia/ gregos/ interessantes/ dança/ São Paulo/ 5 dias/ Brasília

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 Estados Unidos. 2 Muito quente. 3 Michael Jackson e atores. 4 Não muito saudável. 5 Discoteca. 6 Falta de guaraná. 7 sábado.

## Unit 16

Exercise a dois quadros b feira-hippy c pedras preciosas

**Practice** 1 a todas as semanas b todos os anos c todos os ... custam d todos os dias e todas as pessoas ganham f todos os meses 2 Comprei-o (o comprei) na feira-hippy na praça. / Não muito. Só 42 reais. Gosta? / Comprou alguma coisa? / Que livro mais interessante! 3 a carro nosso b estas botas minhas c este gato de José d esta casa sua e estes livros deles 4 1 went to Spain 2 years ago 2 visited Taj Mahal 3 months ago 3 had lunch ½ hour ago 4 went to cinema 5 days ago

**Testing yourself – do you understand?** 1 umbrella 2 restaurant Mineiro 3 20 minutes ago 4 company name 5 shop doorway

## Unit 17

**Practice** 1 a Havia/tinha uma blusa na vitrine de que gostei. b Estava à direita da vitrine. c Ela era baixa, tinha cabelo comprido e olhos azuis. d Ele tinha provavelmente 40 e tantos anos. e Não é mais interessante hoje em dia? f Nadávamos todos os dias. 2 a fui b era c jantávamos d comiam e veio f estava 3 Body i = dress, long hair ii = t-shirt, skirt, short hair, glasses iii = hat, moustache, shirt, trousers 4 a íamos ii b brincávamos iv c tínhamos i d estudávamos v e passávamos iii 5 Havia/tinha uma camisa na vitrine, mas já não está mais lá. / Era preta e feita de lã. / Estava à esquerda da vitrine detrás das calças. / Não obrigado/a. Só queria aquela. 6 a iii b ii c i d iv

## Unit 18

**True or false?** a v b f c f

**Practice** 1 a Não me sinto nada bem. b Onde dói? c Tem alguma coisa para dor dos dentes? d (O) que tem para enxaquecas? e Que aconteceu? f Houve/teve um acidente na rua Campo. 2 a iii b iv

c v d vi e ii f i 3 a iii melhore b iv esteja c i estudem d vi venha  
e ii ganhemos f v ame 4 D Pedro square / 2 / broken arm, cut leg /  
corner with Main Street / Alexandra Esteves 5 a estava fechada  
b foram dados pelo dono c estavam abertas d fui convidado/a e foi  
escrita por Luís f estavam sujos 6 Tem alguma coisa para dor de  
cabeça? / Levo as aspirinas. / Não, que tem para alergias? / Levo  
um frasco do creme. Quanto é por favor? Obrigado/a, adeus.



---

# Key to ‘testing yourself’

## Revision Unit 1

1 o/a/as/o/os uma/uns/umas/um/uma 2 a este b essa c Aqueles  
d destas e Esses f Aquela or Esta 3 a Tudo b Todas c todo  
d toda e tudo f Todas 4 a trinta e seis b cento e cinquenta e dois  
c quinhentos d mil, trezentos e vinte e um e cinco mil e oitocentos  
f doze mil, seiscentos e cinquenta e quatro g vinte e cinco mil,  
novecentos e noventa e nove h cem mil i catorze j noventa e cinco  
5 a 899 b 723 c 468 d 2,501 e 4,802 f 7,554 g 11,100 h 68,336  
i 105 j 307 6 a comem b falo c vai d parte e fazemos f viaja  
g escrevem h compreendem 7 a é b está c é/fica d estão e são/ficam  
f são g é/fica h é 8 a tem ii b há/tem vii c temos viii d há/tem iii  
e tenho vi f têm i g tem iv h há/tem v 9 a Fale b coma c Feche  
d abram e Bebam f subam g comece h Preencha 10 1 americanos  
2 Inglaterra 3 espanhol 4 Brasil 5 França 6 alemães 7 gregos  
8 Itália 9 chinês 10 Alemanha 11 a vestido b saia c calças d sapato  
e camisa f blusa g chapéu h luvas i casaco j gravata 12 vermelho/  
roxo/verde/azul/marrom/rosa/branco/ preto/amarelo 13 Across:  
1 supermercado 2 banco 6 sapataria 7 mercado 8 quiosque Down:  
3 correio 4 açougue 5 livraria 9 café 10 cinema.

## Revision Unit 2

1 a subitamente b Finalmente c Imediatamente d facilmente  
e Aparentemente f temporariamente g mal 2 a compreenderam  
b partiram c vendi d chegaram e esteve f perceberam g teve  
h Tiramos 3 a tinha b acordávamos c estava d sentiam-se e queria  
f ia 4 a tinham ido b tinha comprado c tinha falado d tínhamos  
comido e tinha subido f tinham vivido 5 a tenha b estude c faça  
d abram e vão f falemos 6 a Cento e vinte e cinco b Vinte e três  
c Cento e cinquenta e cinco d Cinquenta e Quatrocentos e oito  
f Mil e quinhentos g Sessenta h Dois mil e quinhentos i Vinte e cinco  
mil, trezentos e um j Cento e vinte e três mil e novecentos

7 a ✓ b ✓ c ✕ trezentos e quarenta e oito d ✓ e ✕ cinco mil,  
 duzentos e vinte e um f ✕ vinte e seis mil, oitocentos e sessenta  
 g ✓ h ✓ 8 a mordido b aberta c mortos d vendido e destruídas  
 f decepcionada 9 sopa/pão/vinho/açúcar/legumes/ sanduíche/  
 presunto/queijo/ cerveja/leite 10 1 novembro 2 maio 3 fevereiro  
 4 abril 5 dezembro 6 julho 7 janeiro 8 setembro 9 março  
 10 outubro 11 a v b i c vi d ii e iv f iii braço/perna/cabeça/mão/  
 olho/dedo/boca/pé/orelha/nariz

# Numbers

um (uma)	1	vinte e um (uma)	21
dois (duas)	2	trinta	30
três	3	quarenta	40
quatro	4	cinquenta	50
cinco	5	sessenta	60
seis	6	setenta	70
sete	7	oitenta	80
oito	8	noventa	90
nove	9	cem (cento)	100
dez	10	cento e um (uma)	101
onze	11	duzentos/as	200
doze	12	trezentos/as	300
treze	13	quatrocentos/as	400
catorze, quatorze	14	quinhentos/as	500
quinze	15	seiscentos/as	600
dezesseis	16	setecentos/as	700
dezesete	17	oitocentos/as	800
dezoito	18	novecentos/as	900
dezenove	19	mil	1 000
vinte	20	um milhão	1 000 000

primeiro/a, 1 <sup>o</sup> /1 <sup>a</sup>	<i>first</i>	sexto/a	<i>sixth</i>
segundo/a, 2 <sup>o</sup> /2 <sup>a</sup>	<i>second</i>	sétimo/a	<i>seventh</i>
terceiro/a, 3 <sup>o</sup> /3 <sup>a</sup>	<i>third</i>	oitavo/a	<i>eighth</i>
quarto/a, 4 <sup>o</sup> /4 <sup>a</sup>	<i>fourth</i>	nono/a	<i>ninth</i>
quinto/a, 5 <sup>o</sup> /5 <sup>a</sup>	<i>fifth</i>	décimo/a	<i>tenth</i>

---

## BP–English vocabulary

**à direita** *on the right*

**à esquerda** *on the left*

**a pé** *on foot*

**abafado** *close, hot*

**aberto** *open*

**advogado/a** *lawyer*

**aeroporto (o)** *airport*

**agenda (a)** *diary*

**agora** *now*

**aguardente (o)** *firewater*

**álcool (o)** *alcohol*

**alô** *hello*

**amigos (os)** *friends*

**andar (o)** *floor*

**anos (os)** *years*

**antigo/a** *old*

**ao fundo** *at the back*

**ao lado de** *next to*

**aos sábados** *on Saturdays*

**apartamento (o)** *room*

**aquele/aquela** *that*

**aqui** *here*

**arroz com marisco (o)** *seafood  
rice*

**às vezes** *sometimes*

**aspirina (a)** *aspirin*

**até** *until, up to*

**avenida (a)** *avenue*

**avião (o)** *aeroplane*

**azeite (o)** *olive oil*

**banco (o)** *bank*

**banheiro (o)** *bathroom*

**barco (o)** *boat*

**barulhento/a** *noisy*

**bastante** *quite*

**bem** *well*

**bem-vindo/a** *welcome*

**bicicleta (a)** *bicycle*

**bilhete (o)** *ticket*

**blusa (a)** *blouse*

**bolsa (a)** *bag*

**bom** *good, right then*

**bonito** *pretty*

**botas (as)** *boots*

**cá** *here*

**cada ...** *every ...*

**café (o)** *café/coffee*

**café da manhã (o)** *breakfast*

**caixa (a)** *cash desk, till*

**calças (a)** *trousers*

**cama (a)** *bed*

**camisa (a)** *shirt*

**canja (a)** *chicken broth*

**capoeira (a)** *acrobatic dance*

**cardápio (o)** *menu*

**carne (a)** *meat*

**caro** *expensive*

**carro (o)** *car*

**carteira (a)** *wallet, purse*

**casa (a)** *house*

**casado/a** *married*

**casal (o)** *couple, double*

**cataratas (as)** *waterfalls*

**cavalo (o)** *horse*

**cedo** *early*

**centro (o)** *centre*

**chamo-me/me chamo**

*my name is*

**chave (a)** *key*

**chega** *arrives*

**chope (o)** *lager*

**chuva (a)** *rain*

**cidade (a)** *town, city*

**clube (o)** *social club*

**coisa (a)** *thing*

**com** *with*

**come** *s/he eats*

**comemos** *we eat*

**comida (a)** *food*

**como é?** *what is it like?*

**comprar** *to buy*

**comprimido (o)** *pill*

**conhecer** *to get to know*

**contra** *against*

**cor (a)** *colour*

**correio (o)** *post office*

**couro (o)** *leather*

**cultura (a)** *culture*

**cultural** *cultural*

**custa** *it costs*

**daqui** *from here*

**de nada** *don't mention it*

**de onde é?** *where are you from?*

**de onde são?** *where are you from? (pl.)*

**de vez em quando** *sometimes*

**debaixo de** *underneath*

**deixar** *to leave*

**delicioso/a** *delicious*

**dentro** *inside*

**depois** *then, after*

**desculpe** *excuse me*

**dia (o)** *day*

**detrás de** *behind*

**difícil** *difficult*

**dinheiro (o)** *money*

**diz** *s/he says*

**durante** *during*

**dúzia (a)** *dozen*

**e** *and*

**é** *is*

**em** *in, on*

**em frente de** *in front of*

**em geral** *generally*

**empresa (a)** *business, company*

**encher** *to fill*

**endereço (o)** *address*

**enorme** *enormous*

**então** *well then*

**entre** *in between*

**escola (a)** *school*

**escritório (o)** *office*

**Espanha (a)** *Spain*

**espanhois** *Spanish (pl.)*

**esquina (a)** *corner*

**está bem** *OK*

**estação (a)** *station*

**este/esta** *this*

**estilo (o)** *style*

**estou bem** *I'm well*

**estrada (a)** *highway*

**estudante (o/a)** *student*

**eu** *I*

**fala?** *do you speak?*

**falo** *I speak*

**família (a)** *family*

**faça favor de ...** *please ...*

**farmácia (a)** *chemist's*

**feijoada (a)** *bean stew*

**férias (as)** *holidays*

**fica** *is situated*

**ficar** *to stay/be situated*

**ficha (a)** *form*

**filha (a)** *daughter*

**filho (o)** *son*

**flores (as)** *flowers*

**fome (a)** *hunger*

**fora** *outside*

**França (a)** *France*

**frango (o)** *chicken*

**funcionar** *to work*

**garrafa (a)** *bottle*

**gasóleo (o)** *diesel*

**gasolina (a)** *petrol*

**gato (o)** *cat*

**gaúcho (o)** *cowboy*

**gente (a)** *people*

**gentil** *kind*

**geralmente** *generally*

**gosta/am?** *do you like?*

**gostam** *they like*

**gostamos** *we like*

**gostaria de** *I would like to*

**gosto** *I like*

**graças a Deus** *thank goodness*

**grande** *big*

**Grécia (a)** *Greece*

**há** *there is, are*

**há meia hora**  $\frac{1}{2}$  *hour ago*

**havia** *there was, were*

**histórico** *historic(al)*

**hoje** *today*

**hotel (o)** *hotel*

**ida e volta** *return (ticket)*

**ida (a)** *single (ticket)*

**idade (a)** *age*

**igualmente** *likewise*

**incluindo** *including*

**índios (os)** *Indians*

**informações** *information*

**inglês/esa** *English*

**internacional** *international*

**interessante** *interesting*

**ir** *to go*

**irmã (a)** *sister*

**irmão (o)** *brother*

**isso** *that's it*

**jacaré (o)** *alligator, caiman*

**Japão (o)** *Japan*

**jogar** *to play*

**jornais (os)** *newspapers*

**lá,** *ali there*

**lamento** *I'm sorry*

**laranjas (as)** *oranges*

**leio** *I read*

**leite (o)** *milk*

**ler** *to read*

**levo** *I'll take*

**limão (o)** *lime*

**limpo** *clean*

**lindo** *pretty*

**linha (a)** *platform*

**litoral** *coastal*

**litro (o)** *litre*

**livros (os)** *books*

**loja (a)** *shop*  
**Londres** *London*  
**longe** *a long way*

**mãe (a)** *mother*  
**maior** *bigger*  
**mais de** *more than*  
**mais ou menos** *more or less*  
**mais tarde** *later*  
**mala (a)** *suitcase*  
**manteiga (a)** *butter*  
**mapa (o)** *map*  
**maravilhoso** *wonderful*  
**marido (o)** *husband*  
**mariscos (os)** *seafood*  
**mas** *but*  
**médico/a** *doctor*  
**meio quilo** *half a kilo*  
**melhorar** *to improve*  
**mês (o)** *month*  
**mesa (a)** *table*  
**mesmo ali** *right there*  
**moderno** *modern*  
**momento (o)** *moment*  
**mora** *live/s*  
**moram** *they, you live*  
**moro** *I live*  
**mosquitos (os)** *mosquitoes*  
**movimentado** *busy*  
**muitas vezes** *often*  
**muito** *very/much*  
**muito bem** *very well*  
**muito prazer** *pleased to meet you*  
**mulher (a)** *wife*  
**mun-do (o)** *world*  
**museu (o)** *museum*  
**música (a)** *music*

**na** *in/on the*  
**nadar** *to swim*  
**não** *no/not*  
**não funciona** *it doesn't work*

**neve (a)** *snow*  
**nome (o)** *name*  
**número (o)** *number*  
**nunca** *never*

**o que faz?** *what do you do?*  
**obrigado/a** *thank you*  
**óculos (os)** *glasses*  
**óleo (o)** *oil*  
**ônibus (o)** *bus*  
**ontem** *yesterday*  
**oportunidade (a)** *opportunity*  
**ouço** *I listen to*  
**outono (o)** *Autumn*  
**outros (os)** *(the) others*  
**ouvir** *to listen to*  
**ovos (os)** *eggs*

**pacote (o)** *packet*  
**pai (o)** *father*  
**país (o)** *country*  
**pais (os)** *parents*  
**pão (o)** *bread*  
**para** *in order to/for*  
**para nós** *for us*  
**parte** *departs*  
**partido** *broken*  
**passamos** *we spend*  
**passaporte (o)** *passport*  
**passar** *to pass/spend*  
**pastelaria (a)** *cake shop*  
**pedir** *to ask for*

**pegar** *to get, catch*  
**pelo menos** *at least*  
**pequeno/a** *small*  
**peras (as)** *pears*  
**perto** *near*  
**pessoalmente** *personally*  
**picante** *spicy*  
**pingar** *to drip*  
**pintar** *to paint*  
**piscina (a)** *swimming pool*  
**plástico** *plastic*  
**podem** *you (pl.) can*  
**podemos** *we can*  
**pois** *well*  
**poluição (a)** *pollution*  
**pôr** *to put*  
**por noite** *per night*  
**por favor** *please*  
**porque** *because*  
**porta (a)** *door*  
**porto (o)** *port*  
**português/esa** *Portuguese*  
**posso?** *may I?*  
**postal (o)** *postcard*  
**pouquinho (um)** *a little bit*  
**praça (a)** *square*  
**preciso de** *I need*  
**preço (o)** *price*  
**preencher** *to fill in*  
**prefere** *he she, you prefer(s)*  
**preferem** *they, you prefer*  
**preferimos** *we prefer*  
**prefiro** *I prefer*  
**presunto (o)** *smoked ham*  
**primeiro** *first*  
**problema (o)** *problem*  
**professor/ora (m/f)** *teacher*  
**provar** *to try, taste*

**provavelmente** *probably*  
**próximo** *nearby*  
**puxa!** *goodness!*

**quadro (o)** *picture*  
**qual?** *which?*  
**quanto é?** *how much is it?*  
**quantos/as** *how many?*  
**quarto (o)**  $\frac{1}{4}$  *litre bottle*  
**quarto (o)** *bedroom*  
**que** *that, which*  
**que mais?** *what else?*  
**que tal?** *how about?*  
**queijo (o)** *cheese*  
**quem?** *who?*  
**quente** *hot*  
**quer** *s/he wants*  
**quilo (o)** *kilo*

**rápido** *fast*  
**recepção (a)** *reception*  
**recomendo** *I recommend*  
**refeições (as)** *meals*  
**refeitório (o)** *canteen*  
**refrigerante (o)** *soft drink*  
**região (a)** *region*  
**reservado** *reserved*  
**reservar** *to reserve*  
**revistas (as)** *magazines*  
**roupas (as)** *clothes*  
**rua (a)** *road*

**sabe?** *do you know?*  
**saia (a)** *skirt*  
**saída (a)** *exit*  
**sanduíche (o)** *sandwich*  
**sapatos (os)** *shoes*  
**saudável** *healthy*



**saúde (a)** *health*  
**se if**  
**se Deus quiser** *God willing*  
**selo (o)** *stamp*  
**sem** *without*  
**sempre** *always*  
**senhores (os)** *you, the gentlemen*  
**sentar-se** *to sit down*  
**sentir-se** *to feel*  
**sim** *yes*  
**sinais (os)** *road signs*  
**sobremesa (a)** *dessert*  
**sobrenome (o)** *surname*  
**somos** *we are*  
**sorvete (o)** *ice cream*  
**sou** *I am*  
**sou de** *I am from*  
**sujo** *dirty*  
**suco (o)** *fruit juice*  
  
**tamanho (o)** *size*  
**também** *also*  
**tão** *so*  
**tarde (a)** *afternoon*  
**táxi (o)** *taxi*  
**tchau** *bye*  
**telenovelas (as)** *soap-operas*  
**televisão (a)** *television*  
**têm** *they have*  
**tem ...?** *do you have ...?*  
**temos** *we have*  
**tempo (o)** *time*  
**tempo de lazer (o)** *leisure time*  
**tempo livre (o)** *free time*  
**tenho** *I have*

**terceiro** *third*  
**terra (a)** *land, hometown*  
**tipicamente** *typically*  
**típico** *typical*  
**todas as noites** *every night*  
**todos os dias** *every day*  
**tomar** *to take*  
**trabalha** *you work*  
**trabalho** *I work*  
**transeunte (o)** *passer-by*  
**trocar** *to change*  
**tudo** *everything*  
**tudo bem? OK?**  
  
**um pouco** *a bit*  
**um pouco de** *a bit of*  
**universidade (a)** *university*  
  
**vago** *free*  
**vários/as** *various*  
**velho/a** *old*  
**vende** *s/he sells*  
**vende-se/se vende** *for sale*  
**vento (o)** *wind*  
**ver** *to see, watch*  
**verão (o)** *summer*  
**vestido (o)** *dress*  
**viagem (a)** *journey*  
**vidro (o)** *window, glass*  
**vinho (o)** *wine*  
**vir** *to come*  
**vista (a)** *view*  
**vive** *lives*  
  
**xarope (o)** *syrup, remedy*

---

## English–BP vocabulary

*a bit (of)* **um pouco (de)**

*a long way* **longe**

*address* **endereço (o)**

*aeroplane* **avião (o)**

*afternoon* **tarde (a)**

*against* **contra**

*age* **idade (a)**

*airport* **aeroporto (o)**

*alcohol* **álcool (o)**

*alligator* **jacaré (o)**

*also* **também**

*always* **sempre**

*and* **e**

*arrives* **chega**

*aspirin* **aspirina (a)**

*at least* **pelo menos**

*at the back* **ao fundo**

*autumn* **outono (o)**

*avenue* **avenida (a)**

*bag* **bolsa (a)**

*bank* **banco (o)**

*bathroom* **banheiro (o)**

*bean stew* **feijoada (a)**

*because* **porque**

*bed* **cama (a)**

*bedroom* **quarto (o)**

*behind* **detrás de**

*bicycle* **bicicleta (a)**

*big* **grande**

*bigger* **maior (mais grande)**

*blouse* **blusa (a)**

*boat* **barco (o)**

*books* **livros (os)**

*boots* **botas (as)**

*bottle* **garrafa (a)**

*bread* **pão (o)**

*breakfast* **café da manhã (o)**

*broken* **partido**

*brother* **irmão (o)**

*bus* **ônibus (o)**

*business, company* **empresa (a)**

*busy* **movimentado, ocupado**

*but* **mas**

*butter* **manteiga (a)**

*bye* **tchau**

*café/coffee* **café (o)**

*cake shop* **pastelaria (a)**

*canteen* **cantina (a)**

*car* **carro, automóvel (o)**

*cash desk, till* **caixa (a)**

*cat* **gato (o)**

*centre* **centro (o)**

*cheese* **queijo (o)**

*chemist's* **farmácia (a)**

*chicken* **frango (o), galinha (a)**

*chicken broth* **canja (a)**

*clean* **limpo**

*close, hot* **abafado**

*clothes* **roupa (a)**

*coastal* **litoral**

*colour* **cor (a)**

*corner* **esquina (a)**

*country* **país (o)**

*couple, double* **casal (o)**

cowboy **gaúcho (o)**  
cultural **cultural**  
culture **cultura (a)**

daughter **filha (a)**  
day **dia (o)**  
delicious **delicioso**  
departs **parte**  
dessert **sobremesa (a)**  
diary **agenda (a)**  
diesel **gasóleo (o)**  
difficult **difícil**  
dirty **sujo**  
do you know? **sabe?**  
do you like? **gosta?**  
do you speak? **fala?**  
doctor **médico/a (o/a)**  
don't mention it **de nada**  
door **porta (a)**  
dozen **dúzia (a)**  
dress **vestido (o)**  
during **durante**

early **cedo**  
eggs **ovos (os)**  
English **inglês**  
enormous **enorme**  
every **cada**  
every day **cada dia/todos os dias**  
every night **cada noite/todas as  
noites**  
everything **tudo**  
excuse me **desculpe**  
exit **saída (a)**  
expensive **caro**

family **família (a)**  
fast **rápido**

father **pai (o)**  
firewater **aguardente (o)**  
first **primeiro**  
floor **andar (o)**  
flowers **flores (as)**  
food **comida (a)**  
for sale **vende-se**  
form **ficha (a)**  
France **França (a)**  
free time **tempo livre (o)**  
friends **amigos (os)**  
from here **daqui**  
fruit juice **suco (o)**

generally **geralmente**  
glasses **óculos (os)**  
God willing **se Deus quiser**  
good, right then **bom**  
goodness! **puxa!**  
Greece **Grécia (a)**

half a kilo **meio quilo**  
half an hour ago **há meia  
hora**  
health **saúde (a)**  
healthy **saudável**  
hello **oi**  
here **aqui, cá**  
highway **estrada (a)**  
historic(al) **histórico**  
holidays **férias (as)**  
horse **cavalo (o)**  
hot **quente**  
hotel **hotel (o)**  
house **casa (a)**  
how about? **que tal?**  
how many? **quantos?**  
how much is it? **quanto é?**

*hunger* **fome (a)**  
*husband* **marido (o)**

*I am from* **sou de**  
*I like* **gosto (de)**  
*I would like to* **gostaria (de)**  
*I'll take* **levo**  
*I'm sorry* **lamento/sinto muito**  
*I'm well* **estou bem**  
*ice-cream* **sorvete (o)**  
*if* **se**  
*in between* **entre**  
*in front of* **em frente de**  
*in order to/for* **para**  
*in, on* **em**  
*in/on the* **no, na**  
*including* **incluindo, incluso**  
*information* **informações (as)**  
*inside* **dentro**  
*interesting* **interessante**  
*international* **internacional**  
*is situated* **fica**  
*it costs* **custa**  
*it doesn't work* **não funciona**

*Japan* **Japão (o)**  
*journey* **viagem (a)**

*key* **chave (a)**  
*kilo* **quilo (o)**  
*kind* **simpático**

*lager* **chope (o)**  
*land, hometown* **terra (a)**  
*later* **mais tarde**  
*lawyer* **avogado (o)**  
*leather* **couro (o)**  
*leisure time* **tempo de lazer (o)**

*lime* **limão (o)/lima (a)**  
*litre* **litro (o)**  
*live/s* **mora**  
*London* **Londres**

*magazines* **revistas (as)**  
*map* **mapa (o)**  
*married* **casado**  
*may I?* **posso?**  
*meals* **refeições (as)**  
*menu* **cardápio (o)**  
*milk* **leite (o)**  
*modern* **moderno**  
*moment* **momento (o)**  
*money* **dinheiro (o)**  
*month* **mês (o)**  
*more or less* **mais ou menos**  
*more than* **mais (de) que**  
*mosquitoes* **mosquitos (os)**  
*mother* **mãe (a)**  
*museum* **museu (o)**  
*music* **música (a)**  
*my name is ...* **o meu nome é ...**

*name* **nome (o)**  
*near* **perto**  
*never* **nunca**  
*newspapers* **jornais (os)**  
*next to* **ao lado de**  
*no, not* **não**  
*noisy* **barulhento**  
*now* **agora**  
*number* **número (o)**

*often* **muitas vezes**  
*oil* **óleo (o)**  
*OK* **está bem**  
*old* **velho/antigo**

olive oil **azeite (o)**  
on foot **a pé**  
on Saturdays **aos sábados**  
on the left **à esquerda**  
on the right **à direita**  
open **aberto**  
opportunity **oportunidade (a)**  
oranges **laranjas (as)**  
others **outros/as**  
outside **fora**

packet **pacote (o)**  
parents **pais (os)**  
passer-by **transeunte (o/a)**  
passport **passaporte (o)**  
pears **peras (as)**  
people **gente (a)/pessoas (as)**  
per night **por noite**  
personally **pessoalmente**  
petrol **gasolina (a)**  
picture **quadro (o)**  
pill **comprimido (o)**  
plastic **(de) plástico**  
platform **linha (a)**  
please **por favor**  
pleased to meet you **muito prazer**  
pollution **poluição (a)**  
port **porto (o)**  
Portuguese **português/esa**  
post office **correios (os)**  
postcard **postal (o)**  
pretty **bonito/lindo**  
price **preço (o)**  
probably **provavelmente**  
problem **problema (o)**  
  
quite **bastante**

rain **chuva (a)**  
reception **recepção (a)**  
region **região (a)**  
reserved **reservado**  
return (ticket) **ida e volta**  
right there **ali mesmo**  
road **rua (a)**  
road signs **sinais (os)**  
room **quarto (o)**

s/he eats **come**  
s/he prefers **prefere**  
sandwich **sanduíche (o)**  
s/he says **diz**  
school **escola (a)**  
seafood **mariscos (os)**  
s/he sells **vende**  
shirt **camisa (a)**  
shoes **sapatos (os)**  
shop **loja (a)**  
single (ticket) **ida (a)**  
sister **irmã (a)**  
size **tamanho (o)**  
skirt **saia (a)**  
small **pequeno**  
smoked ham **presunto (o)**  
snow **neve (a)**  
so then **então**  
soap-operas **telenovelas (as)**  
social club **clube (o)**  
soft drink **refrigerante (o)**  
sometimes **de vez em quando**  
son **filho (o)**  
Spain **Espanha (a)**  
Spanish **espanhol/espanhola**  
spicy **picante**  
square **praça (a)**

stamp **selo (o)**  
station **estação (a)**  
student **estudante (o/a)**  
style **estilo (o)**  
suitcase **mala (a)**  
summer **verão (o)**  
surname **sobrenome (o)**  
swimming pool **piscina (a)**  
syrup, cough mixture **xarope (o)**

table **mesa (a)**  
taxi **táxi (o)**  
teacher **professor/a**  
television **televisão (a)**  
thank goodness! **ainda bem!**  
thank you **obrigado/a**  
that **esse/aquele**  
that, which **que**  
then, after **depois**  
there **ali/lá**  
there is, are **há**  
thing **coisa (a)**  
third **terceiro**  
this **este, esta**  
ticket **bilhete (o)**  
to ask for **pedir**  
to buy **comprar**  
to change **trocar/cambiar**  
to come **vir**  
to feel **sentir-se**  
to fill **encher**  
to fill in **preencher**  
to get to know **conhecer**  
to get, catch **pegar**  
to go **ir**  
to improve **melhorar**  
to leave **partir/deixar**

to listen to **escutar**  
to paint **pintar**  
to pass/spend **passar**  
to play **jogar/brincar/tocar**  
to put **pôr**  
to reserve **reservar**  
to see, watch **ver**  
to sit down **sentar-se**  
to stay **ficar**  
to swim **nadar**  
to take **tomar/levar**  
to try, taste **provar/experimentar**  
to work **trabalhar**  
today **hoje**  
town, city **cidade (a)**  
trousers **calça (a)**  
typical **típico**  
typically **tipicamente**

underneath **debaixo**  
university **universidade (a)**  
until, up to **até**

various **vários**  
very **muito**  
very well **muito bem**  
view **vista (a)**

wallet, purse **carteira (a)**  
s/he wants **quer**  
waterfalls **cataratas (as)**  
welcome **bem-vindo/a**  
well **bem**  
well then **então**  
what do you do? **o que faz?**  
what else? **que mais?**  
what is it like? **como é?**

*where are you from?* **de onde é?**

*which?* **qual?**

*who* **quem?**

*wife* **esposa/mulher (a)**

*wind* **vento (o)**

*window* **janela (a)**

*wine* **vinho (o)**

*with* **com**

*without* **sem**

*wonderful* **maravilhoso**

*world* **mundo (o)**

*years* **anos (os)**

*yes* **sim**

*yesterday* **ontem**

*you can* **pode**

---

# Grammar index

Numbers refer to units.

---

## Verbs

commands, 7  
conditional, 13  
future, 7, 13  
haber, 4, 8, 16, 17  
imperfect, 17  
passive voice, 18  
past participles, 13  
pluperfect, 18  
present tense, 2, 5  
preterite, 15  
progressive tenses, 6, 13  
reflexive verbs, 2  
regular verbs, 2, 5  
ser/estar/ficar, 1, 2, 3  
spelling changes, 8, 15  
subjunctive, 18  
ter, 2, 8, 13

---

## Grammar

adjectives, 1, 2, 5, 6, 12, 15, 17  
adverbs, 15  
articles (the, a), 1  
cada, 16  
contractions, 2, 4  
demonstratives, 1, 4, 13  
exclamations, 13, 16  
forms of address, 1  
interrogatives, 1, 12  
nouns, 1  
numbers, 1, 2, 4, 5  
object pronouns, 9, 11, 12  
possessives, 1, 2, 3, 9, 16, 17  
prepositions, 3, 5, 9, 10, 15  
subject pronouns, 1  
suffixes, 12  
time, 4, 5, 6, 9, 12, 13